This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T
918.69.141

The Gift of
the Author,
Joseph H. Allen,
of Cambridge.
(H. C. 1840.)
7 Sept. 1869.

3 2044 097 054 860

MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.

MANUAL

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PREPARED BY

WILLIAM F. ALLEN, A.M.,

PROFESSOR OF ANCIENT LANGUAGES AND HISTORY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN;

AND

JOSEPH H. ALLEN,

CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

TWELFTH EDITION.

BOSTON:

PUBLISHED BY EDWIN GINN.

CHICAGO: FRED B. GINN.

1869.

Educ T 918.69. 141

~~5254.28~~
~~Educ T 918.685~~

1869. Sept.

Gift of the Author
Joseph H. Allen
(illegible)

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1868, by

J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the District of Massachusetts.

CAMBRIDGE:
PRESS OF JOHN WILSON AND SON.

NOTE TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

SINCE the first edition of this Grammar was published, it has been introduced in numerous schools and classes requiring a more elementary treatment, and a fuller exhibition of paradigms, than those for which it was originally designed. Several teachers, indeed, of experience and skill, have found our condensed forms of inflection amply sufficient, even for beginners, — preferring to exercise the judgment and intelligence of the pupil in the construction of other forms on the model of these, as part of the business of the class-room; and considering that in this way *more of the language itself is learned*, and more accurately, than by the mere exercise of verbal memory. But, for the convenience of those who adopt a different method, very full Tables of Inflection have been inserted — which can be used or not, according to the teacher's choice — distinguished by a different type and marginal rule, and carefully accented, so as to facilitate their pronunciation by the common or English method. These Tables have enabled us, by relieving our pages here and there, to expand our treatment of several points where it seemed desirable; and, at the same time, to introduce considerable new material, which will be found convenient for reference.

In the Supplement we have set forth, with some fullness, for the use of teachers, the method of Instruction, and the principles of Classification by Vowel and Consonant Stems, which we have had in view in the preparation of this Manual.

CAMBRIDGE, July, 1869.

PREFACE.

MANY of the best friends of classical education have long desired a manual of elementary instruction in Latin grammar, — which lies at the foundation of a classical course, — full and accurate enough to be a practical guide to the learner, but avoiding the prodigious multiplication of details, which have so overgrown that study in our ordinary school text-books.

In attempting to meet this want, we have been guided by the following principles: —

1. To admit only what is likely to be really useful information to the learner, and nothing which he will be likely to look for in the dictionary first.

2. To avoid, as far as possible, all subtilties of theory and technicalities of phrase; and to illustrate every point, as it is stated, by examples in correct Latin, uniformly rendered into the corresponding English idiom.

3. To aid the eye, by the typography and arrangement of the page, so as to make it an easy manual of reference. Every Latin word we have used is printed

in a special type, cast expressly for this book, and is followed immediately (except in the section on Prosody), by its English equivalent, *italicized.* The quantities of roots and inflections are abundantly given throughout. In orthography, we have followed the most approved editions of the present day, adopting a few forms which may possibly be regarded as innovations, but varying less than some might desire from the past usage of our text-books.

In the classification and arrangement of paradigms we have expended a great deal of care. The classification of Nouns of the Third Declension, — which is based partly on that of Key, — seems to us to have great advantages over that commonly adopted. The exhibition of the Verb-forms will be found not only a material help to the learner by its compactness, clearness, and easiness of reference; but to have the special benefit of keeping distinctly in view the point (which teachers so often fail to make familiar) that all irregularities, or peculiarities of conjugation, are confined to the forms from the first or Present stem, while the others follow one uniform model throughout.

This volume is not, in any sense, an abridgment or compilation from previous writers. Except in some details of Prosody, we have not been *directly* indebted to any of those in use in our schools. Our plan has grown from our own wants and experience; and the examples have been selected, in general, from our

own reading. Only in a few instances, where it seemed desirable for completeness, we have not hesitated to borrow them from other sources.

While we have omitted a great amount of matter which we think serves in many text-books merely to obscure to the learner the outlines of the language, it will be found that its leading forms and usages are very fully exhibited; at the same time much incidental illustration is given, not contained in any other school grammar within our knowledge. A book designed for reference, as a full treatise on etymology and syntax, very properly contains much material which would be out of place in a brief manual like the present. We do not believe that it is best for the learner to begin with as large a book as he may require afterwards; and besides, if principles are to be taught, and not dead rules, it is a clear advantage not to become wedded to any set form of words.

Two or three points seem to require brief explanation to teachers who have been in the habit of using the ordinary text-books.

First, the recognition of the Locative Case, which has been sometimes called the "Dative of Place." The fact we wish to recognize in the structure of the language is one which all grammarians admit; and to accept it will be to many persons a real relief from the old arbitrary and unintelligible rule.

In interpreting the Subjunctive, we have thought best to give it no separate translation in the paradigms.

To render it, as is often done, by the English Potential, is as misleading as any false step, so low down among the elements, can well be. We have accordingly illustrated its use, at the outset, by a score of select examples of Latin idiom; and trust in the Syntax to have made it as clear as is consistent with the brevity of our plan.

In simplifying the treatment of the Gerund and Gerundive, we have followed the best English authorities, from Milton's brief Latin "Accedence," to the works of Donaldson, Key, and D'Arcy Thompson. The phrase "Nominative of the Gerund," which we have employed, is easily understood; it suggests an explanation of the subject which many scholars prefer to that usually given; and it need not be taken as controverting the more common doctrine, that the form in question is the Neuter of the Future Passive Participle, used impersonally.

The Syntax of the Moods will be found relatively more full than other parts of the book; this we have thought warranted by the difficulty and peculiar obscurity of the subject. In general, we have not, as is usually done, treated the Subjunctive by itself; but have classified the usages in the different kinds of subordinate clauses, in nearly all of which either that or the Indicative may be employed in special relations. Here, as everywhere, we have derived constant assistance from Madvig's "Lateinische Sprachlehre," the best single treatise upon Latin grammar with

which we are acquainted: from this we have taken more special points than from all other sources combined. We are far from claiming an entirely satisfactory treatment of the Subjunctive, which indeed has never yet been adequately analyzed, and which is much more difficult in Latin than in Greek. Conditional Sentences, however, in which we have followed the doctrine of Goodwin's "Greek Moods and Tenses," we believe will be found nowhere more fully explained than here.

In the matter of Prosody, we have given enough to enable the student to analyze for himself, and to read easily into metre, all the forms of verse in Virgil, Ovid, Horace, and (excepting a few lyrical passages) most of those in the Dramatic writers. For the rules and illustrations of quantity in Latin words, — omitting numerous Greek forms, — this grammar will be found, we believe, as full and accurate as any other.

In many points, both of etymology and syntax we have availed ourselves of the counsel and guidance of Professor LANE, of Harvard University; who has greatly aided us by his care in examining all of the proof-sheets, and by the suggestions of his very exact and thorough scholarship. In points of practical adaptation to the wants of classes, the long experience of our brother, Rev. T. P. ALLEN, of West Newton, Mass., has been a valuable guide. In the preparation of the Syntax, we are under especial obligation to Professor

J. B. FEULING, of the University of Wisconsin, who kindly read over the whole manuscript of this portion, and made many valuable suggestions.

In addition we would say, that, while this is intended to be a sufficient text-book for the learner, — at least until some more copious systematic treatise is required during a college course, — it is not claimed to be sufficient for the teacher. For his daily use in the class-room, as well as for his own more accurate information, he needs the ampler material so industriously gathered in the many excellent manuals in use. But, for ever so short a course in classical instruction, we hold that the language itself, and the literature which contains it, is the real object of study; and that every hour spent on the details of grammar, which does not directly help to this, is an injury to the student's progress, and a wrong to his intelligence.

Finally, this book is not meant for children. For most learners, we think, it would be better to wait till at least thirteen or fourteen, before attempting the systematic study of so difficult a tongue. At that age, an intelligent boy or girl, who studies it at all, ought to be led at once to those forms of it which can be readily understood and enjoyed.

CAMBRIDGE, MASSACHUSETTS.
August, 1868.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—FORMS OF WORDS. (ETYMOLOGY.)

Sect.		Page
1.	Alphabet	1
2.	Pronunciation	2
3.	Quantity	2
4.	Accent	3
5.	Inflection	3
6.	Gender	4
7.	Case	4
8.	Declension	5

Nouns.

9.	First Declension	6
10.	Second Declension	7
11.	Third Declension. I. Vowel Stems	8
	II. Liquid Stems	9
	III. Mute Stems	9
	IV. Rules of Gender	11
12.	Fourth Declension	11
13.	Fifth Declension	12
14.	Irregular Nouns. I. Defective	12
	II. Variable	13
15.	Proper Names	13

Sect.		Page
	Adjectives.	
16.	Inflection. I. First and Second Declension	14
	II. Third Declension	15
17.	Comparison	15
18.	Numerals. I. Cardinal and Ordinal	18
	II. Distributive	19
	Pronouns.	
19.	Personal and Reflective	20
20.	Demonstrative	21
21.	Relative, Interrogative and Indefinite	22
22.	Correlatives	23
	Verbs.	
23.	Structure	24
24.	Moods	24
25.	Participles	26
26.	Gerund and Supine	27
27.	Tenses	28
28.	Personal Endings	30
29.	**Esse**	30
	abesse, adesse, posse, prodesse	32
30.	Conjugation	32
31.	Active Voice	34
32.	Passive Voice	36
33.	Rules of Conjugation	38
34.	Forms of Conjugation	39
35.	Deponent Verbs	40
36.	Derivative Verbs	41
37.	Irregular Verbs	41
	volo, nolo, malo	41
	fero, edo, eo, facio, queo	42
38.	Defective Verbs, **coepi, aio, inquam, fari, salve,** &c.	43
39.	Impersonal Verbs	43
40.	Periphrastic Forms	44
41.	Adverbs	44
42.	Prepositions	46
43.	Conjunctions	47
44.	Formation of Words	50

PART II.—USE OF WORDS. (SYNTAX.)

SECT. PAGE
45. Definitions 53

I. RULES OF AGREEMENT.

46. Of Nouns 53
47. Of Adjectives 54
48. Of Relatives 57
49. Of Verbs 58

II. RULES OF GOVERNMENT.

50. Genitive 59
51. Dative 63
52. Accusative 66
53. Vocative 68
54. Ablative 69
55. Time and Place 73
56. Prepositions 75

III. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

57. Sequence of Tenses 77
58. Moods 80
59. Conditional Sentences 81
60. Implied Conditions 84
61. Conditional Particles 85
62. Relations of Time 86
63. Cause or Reason 87
64. Purpose 88
65. Consequence or Result 89
66. Intermediate Clauses 90
67. Oratio Obliqua 91
68. Wishes and Commands 95
69. Subjunctive with Relatives 96
70. Substantive Clauses 96
71. Questions 98
72. Participles 99
73. Gerund and Gerundive 99
74. Supine 101
75. General Rules of Syntax 102
76. Arrangement 103

PART III.—RULES OF VERSE. (PROSODY.)

SECT.		PAGE
77.	Rhythm	105
78.	Quantity. I. General Rules	105
	II. Final Syllables	106
	III. Penultimate Syllables	108
79.	Feet	111
80.	Scanning	113
81.	Metre	114
82.	Forms of Verse	115
83.	Reckoning of Time	119
84.	Reckoning of Money	119
85.	Roman Prænomens	120

SUPPLEMENT.

ON THE METHOD OF TEACHING LATIN.

I.	Preliminary Instruction	121
II.	Definitions	122
III.	Pronunciation	125

PRINCIPLES OF INFLECTION AND CLASSIFICATION.

I.	Roots and Stems	129
II.	Classification of Nouns	130
III.	Agreement	133
IV.	Inflection of Verbs	135

ON SOME PECULIAR CONSTRUCTIONS IN LATIN.

I.	Idioms	136
II.	Substantive Clauses	136

LATIN GRAMMAR.

PART FIRST.

FORMS OF WORDS. (ETYMOLOGY.)

1. Alphabet.

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, wanting **w**.

Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y.** Diphthongs are **ae, oe** (often written **æ, œ**), **au, eu,** and in poetry **ei** and **ui.**

Mute Consonants are **p, b, f, v** (labial); **t, d** (lingual); **c** (**k,**) **g** (palatal). Liquids are **l, m, n, r.** Double Consonants are **x** (**cs**), **z** (**ds**). But **m** may be classed as labial.

The Aspirate, **h,** is merely a silent breathing, and is not reckoned as a Consonant.

The earlier Alphabet consisted of 21 letters, viz.,

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, x.

y and **z** were added, in words derived from Greek.

i and **u,** when used as consonants (having the sound of **y** and **w**), are generally written **j** and **v**: as, **juvenis,** *a youth,* for **iuuenis.**

k is used only in a few words, generally at the beginning, and is always followed by **a.**

c is usually written for **k**; and often for **qu,** (regularly when followed by **u**): as in **cum** (for **quum**) *when*; **secutus** (for **sequutus**) *having followed;* and, more rarely, in **ecus** (for **equus**) *a horse,* **cotidie** (for **quotidie**) *daily,* and others.

In early use, **u** never follows **u** (**v**), but **o** instead: as in **volt**, *will*. Often, **i** is put for **ii**, or **ji**, as in **obit**, *died*; **obicit**, *cast*. Examples of variation in spelling are, **-undus** or **-endus** in gerund forms; **-umus** or **imus** in superlatives; **adulescens**, *youth*, **epistula**, *letter*, for **adolescens**, **epistola**; **cena**, **caena**, **coena**, *supper*.

The last letter of the Prepositions **ab**, **ad**, **con** (**cum**), **ex**, **in** and **sub**, when combined with other words, is often altered to give an evener sound: as **ad-** or **al-latus**, *brought*, **in-** or **im-mensus**, *boundless*; **sub-** or **suf-fero**, *sustain*.

The verb **est**, *is*, is sometimes joined in spelling with the previous word, especially in the old poets, or when the two would be united by elision: as **homost**, *he is a man*, **periculumst**, *there is danger*. So **vin'**, *wilt?* **scin'**, *know'st?* for **visne**, **scisne**.

In the division of syllables, a consonant between two vowels is always written with the latter; as **do-mi-nus**, *master*: also, any combination of consonants which can be used to begin a word; as **ho-spes**, *guest*; **ma-gnus**, *great* (except compounds, as **ob-it**).

2. Pronunciation.

Among us, Latin is generally pronounced like English. But there are *no silent letters*, except in scanning verse, by the usage called elision. (§ **80.**)

c and **g** are made *soft* before **e**, **i**, **y**, and the diphthongs **ae**, **eu**, **oe**; **ch** is always like **k**; **es** and (in plural) **os**, final, are pronounced as in *disease*, *morose*. (See Supp. pp. 123–128).

The Roman pronunciation of the Vowels was no doubt like the Italian. In English, for the long and short vowels respectively, it may be nearly represented thus: —

a as in *father*, *fast*; **e** as in *rein*, *met*; **i** as in *machine*, *fill*; **o** as in *holy*, *wholly*; **u** as in *rude*, *full*.

c and **g** were probably always sounded hard.

3. Quantity.

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, **vĭa**, *way*.

2. A diphthong is long; as, **fōēdus**, *league*.

3. A syllable formed by contraction is long; as, **nīl**, *nothing*, for **nĭhĭl**.

4. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long, as **rēctus**, *straight*, **judĕx**, *juror:* but a short vowel before a mute followed by l or r, is common, as in **volŭcris**, *bird;* that is, it may be long in verse.

The sign ¯ denotes that a vowel is long; ˘ that it is short.

A short vowel differs from a long one not in *sound* but in *length;* as in **pătĕr**, *father*, **mātĕr**, *mother*. (See §§ **77, 79**).

4. Accent.

Words of two syllables are always accented on the Penult; as, **ĕ'rant**, *they were*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the Penult, if that is long; as, **amī'cus**, *friend:* if it is short, or common, then on the Antepenult; as, **dŏ'mĭnŭs**, *master;* **a'lacrĭs**, *eager*. But ĭ in **-ius** has the accent.

The Penult is the last syllable but one; the Antepenult, the last but two (**paene**, *almost;* **ultima**, *last;* **ante**, *before*).

5. Inflection.

1. Inflection is a change made in the ending of a word to express some change in meaning; as, **vŏc o**, *I call;* **vŏc ăt**, *he calls*.

2. That part of the word which remains unchanged is called the Root, or Stem. When a primitive form, common to Latin with other languages, it is always called the Root: thus the root of **fŭg a**, *flight*, is found in the English *fugitive*.

3. In Latin, Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Participles, are inflected to express Declension (gender, number, and case); Adjectives and Adverbs to express Comparison; Verbs to express Conjugation (voice, mood, tense, number, and person).

4. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called Particles: they are, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections. Adverbs, especially those of time, place, and manner, are also sometimes reckoned as Particles.

6. Gender.

1. Gender may be either natural, as **pŭĕr**, *boy;* **puellă**, *girl;* **mālum**, *apple:* or grammatical, as **lăpĭs**, *stone* (masc.); **mănŭs**, *hand* (fem.).

2. The following are general rules of gender: —

Names of Rivers (except a few ending in **a**) are masculine: as, **Tămĕsis**, *the Thames;* **Rhŏdănus**, *the Rhone.*

Most names of Plants are feminine: as, **cornus**, *cornel.*

Indeclinable nouns, or Phrases used as nouns, are neuter; as, **illud Cassiānum, "Cui bŏnō fuĕrĭt,"** *that saying of Cassius,* "*For whose advantage it was.*"

3. Many Nouns may be either masculine or feminine, according to sex; as, **exsŭl**, *exile;* **bōs**, *ox, cow.* They are said to be of Common Gender (if things without life, Doubtful).

4. A few are always connected with adjectives in the same gender, either masculine or feminine, independent of sex; thus, **ansĕr**, *goose,* is always masculine, and **vulpēs**, *fox,* feminine. They are called Epicene.

7. Case.

There are in Latin six Cases; namely, —

1. Nominative, used as the subject of a direct proposition: as, **pătĕr mĕŭs ădest**, *my father is here.*

2. Genitive (*of*), generally denoting origin or possession; also used with many adjectives and verbs, especially those expressing emotion: as,

patrĭs ejŭs ămīcŭs mĭsĕrētŭr meī, *his father's friend pities me.*

3. Dative (*to* or *for*), generally used for the indirect object, or for the person whose interest is concerned: as,

dĕdit mĭhi cultellum: magnō mĭhi ūsui ĕrăt; *he gave me a pocket-knife; it was of great service to me.*

4. Accusative (*towards*), used as the direct object of a verb, and after most prepositions: as,

dum agrum ărābăt ĭn hortum vēnī, *while he was ploughing the field, I came into the garden.*

5. VOCATIVE, used in direct address: as,

hūc vĕnī, cārĕ mī fīliŏlĕ, *come hither, my dear little son.*

6. ABLATIVE (*by, from, with*), used with many verbs and prepositions, especially to express instrument or separation: as,

ĭn hortō lūdēbāmŭs, et cultellō mē laesĭt, *we were playing in the garden, and he hurt me with a knife.*

All, excepting the nominative and vocative, are often called Oblique cases.

7. Some grammarians reckon also a Locative case, signifying the *place where:* it is generally the same in form with the Dative, and may be called the Dative of Place (§ **55**, III. 3): as,

Rōmae vĕl Athēnīs essĕ vĕlim, *I should like to be at Rome or Athens.*

8. DECLENSION.

I. There are five Declensions of nouns in Latin, distinguished by the termination of the Genitive Singular, and by their characteristic or leading Vowel. These are as follows: —

DECL.	1.	Gen. Sing.	**ae,**	Leading Vowel	**a**
,,	2.	,,	**ī (ius)**	,,	,,	**o**
,,	3.	,,	**ĭs**	,,	,,	**i**
,,	4.	,,	**ūs**	,,	,,	**u**
,,	5.	,,	**ēi**	,,	,,	**e**

II. The following are general rules of declension: —

1. The vocative is always the same in form with the nominative, except in the singular of nouns in **us**, of the second declension.

2. In Neuters, the nominative and accusative are always alike, and in the plural end in **ă**.

3. Except in neuters, the accusative singular always ends in **m**, and the accusative plural in **s**.

4. In the most ancient form, the dative singular of all the declensions ends in **ī**; in the third declension, the locative case may end in **ĕ** or **ī**.

5. The dative and ablative plural are always alike.

6. The genitive plural always ends in **um**.

NOUNS.

9. First Declension. (a.)

	SINGULAR.	
Nominative.	**stell ă,**	*a star.*
Genitive.	**stell ae,**	*of a star.*
Dative.	**stell ae,**	*to a star.*
Accusative.	**stell ăm,**	*a star.*
Vocative.	**stell ă,**	*thou star!*
Ablative.	**stell ā,**	*with a star.*

	PLURAL.	
Nominative.	**stell ae,**	*stars.*
Genitive.	**stell ārŭm,**	*of stars.*
Dative.	**stell īs,**	*to stars.*
Accusative.	**stell ās,**	*stars.*
Vocative.	**stell ae,**	*ye stars!*
Ablative.	**stell īs,**	*with stars.*

1. Most nouns of the first declension are feminine.

2. The genitive and dative singular anciently ended in **āi**, which is occasionally found in a few words, as, **aulāi**, *of a hall*. There is also an old genitive in **ās**, found in **paterfamilias**.

3. The genitive plural, especially of compounds with **cŏla** and **gĕna**, signifying *dwelling* and *descent*, is sometimes contracted into **ūm**: as, **caellĭcŏlūm**, *of the heavenly ones*.

4. The dative and ablative plural of **dea**, *goddess*, **filia**, *daughter*, and a few others, end in the old regular form **ābŭs**.

5. Some Greek nouns end in **ās**, **ēs** (masc.), and **ē** (fem.) in the nominative, and **n** in the accusative; those in **e** have the genitive in **es**: as, **Aenēās**, acc. **Aenēăn**, voc. **Aenēā**; **Anchīses**, gen. **Anchisae**, acc. **Anchisen**, voc. **Anchisē**; **Pēnĕlŏpē**, **Penelŏpēs**, **Penelopēn**; **grammatĭcē** or **grammatĭcă**, *grammar*.

10. Second Declension. (o.)

Most nouns of the second declension ending in **ŭs** (**ŏs**), **ĕr**, **ĭr**, are masculine; those ending in **ŭm** (**ŏn**) are neuter.

	Man.	*Book.*	*Slave.*	*War.*
	SINGULAR.			
Nom.	**vĭr**	**lĭbĕr**	**servŭs** (**ŏs**)	**bellŭm**
Gen.	**vĭr ī**	**libr ī**	**serv ī**	**bell ī**
Dat.	**vir ō**	**libr ō**	**serv ō**	**bell ō**
Acc.	**vir ŭm**	**libr ŭm**	**serv ŭm** (**om**)	**bell ŭm**
Voc.	**vir**	**liber**	**serv ĕ**	**bell ŭm**
Abl.	**vir ō**	**libr ō**	**serv ō**	**bell ō**
	PLURAL.			
Nom.	**vir ī**	**libr ī**	**serv ī**	**bell ă**
Gen.	**vir ōrŭm** (**ūm**)	**libr ōrŭm**	**serv ōrŭm**	**bell ōrŭm**
Dat.	**vir īs**	**libr īs**	**serv īs**	**bell īs**
Acc.	**vir ōs**	**libr ōs**	**serv ōs**	**bell ă**
Voc.	**vir ī**	**libr ī**	**serv ī**	**bell ă**
Abl.	**vir īs**	**libr īs**	**serv īs**	**bell īs**

1. Some Greek words end in **ŏs** (M.) or **ŏn** (N.); as, **arctos**, *the Polar Bear;* **barbĭton**, *lyre.* The old form **ŏs**, **ŏn**, for **ŭs**, **um**, after **u** or **v**, as in **servŏs**, and the gen. pl. **ōn**, are sometimes found.

2. Names of towns in **us** (**os**) are femininine: as, **Cŏrinthus.** Also, **alvus**, *belly;* **cŏlus**, *distaff;* **hŭmus**, *ground;* **vannus**, *winnowing-shovel;* with most names of plants.

3. The locative singular ends in **i**: as, **Cŏrinthi**, *at Corinth.*

4. The genitive of nouns in **ius** and **ium** is often written with a single **i**: as **fīlī**, *of a son*, **ingĕ'nī**, *of genius.*

5. Proper names in **ius** drop **e** in the vocative; as, **Vergĭlius**, voc. **Vergĭ'lī**: also **filius**, *son*, and **genius**, *divine guardian.*

6. In the gen. plur. **ōrŭm** is often contracted into **um** or **om.**

7. **Deus**, *God*, has voc. **deus**; plural, n. v. **dei**, **dii**, or **di**; dat. abl. **deis**, **diis**, **dīs.** For the genitive plural, **dīvum** or **dīvom** is often used.

8. Nouns in **er** generally drop **e** in declining, as in **agĕr**, **agri**, *field:* but retain it in **pŭĕr**, *boy;* **gĕnĕr**, *son-in-law;* **sŏcĕr**, *father-in-law;* **vespĕr**, *evening;* and compounds in **-fer** and **-ger.**

9. **Vulgus**, *mob;* **pĕlăgus**, *sea;* and **vīrus**, *poison*, are neuter.

10. Many Greek names, as **Orpheus**, have acc. **-ea**, and voc. **-eu.**

11. Third Declension.

Nouns of the third declension are classed according to their stems, whether ending in a Vowel, a Liquid, or a Mute Consonant. (See Supplement, pp. 129–133).

I. Vowel Stems. (i.)

	Ship (F.)	*Cloud* (F.)	*Sea* (N.)
Sing. N.	nāvĭs	nūbēs	mărĕ
G.	nāvĭs	nubis	maris
D.	navī	nubi	mari
Ac.	navĕm (ĭm)	nubem	mare
V.	navĭs	nubes	mare
Ab.	navĕ (ī)	nube	mari
Plu. N.	navēs	nubes	marĭă
G.	navĭŭm	nubium	marium
D.	navĭbŭs	nubibus	maribus
Ac.	navēs (īs)	nubes (is)	maria
V.	navēs	nubes	maria
Ab.	navĭbŭs.	nubibus	maribus

1. A few nouns in ăl and ăr are properly neuters of adjectives in ālis, āris, (omitting final e), and belong to this class. They are declined like mare: as, ănĭm ăl, ālis, pl. anim alia, *living thing* (from anima, *breath*); calcār, āris, *spur* (from calx, *heel*). Here also belong imber, linter, ūter, venter (M.).

2. The old forms of sing. acc. in ĭm, and abl. in ī, and of the plur. acc. in īs, are found in many words. In Adjectives of this class the nom. sing. ĭs and abl. ī are always used. (T. 2, 3, 4, 5.

3. Several names of towns, as Praenestĕ, Caerĕ, and the mountain Soracte (N.), have the ablative ĕ. Sometimes, also, marĕ, *sea*, and rētĕ, *net*, in verse.

4. A few nouns, as cănis, *dog*, jŭvĕnis, *youth*, have the genitive plural in um. (T. 2, 6.)

5. Vīs, *force*, has acc. vim, abl. vī, plur. vīrēs, vīrium, vīrĭbŭs, *strength*.

6. Greek names in is, as Alexis, have the acc. im or in, voc. ĭ. Some in es have forms of the 1st or 2d declension: as, Achilles, gen. ei or i, dat. i, acc. ea, voc. e, abl. i; Xerxes, acc. Xerxen.

II. Liquid Stems.

In nouns whose stem ends in a Liquid (**l, n, r**), the nominative is the same as the stem, sometimes with a change of vowel, as: —

	Sing. *Honor* (m.)	Plur.	Sing. *Name* (n.)	Plur.
Nom.	**hŏnŏr (ōs)**	**honōr es**	**nōmĕn**	**nomĭn a**
Gen.	**honōr is**	**honor um**	**nomĭn is**	**nomin um**
Dat.	**honor i**	**honor ibus**	**nomin i**	**nomin ibus**
Acc.	**honor em**	**honor es**	**nomen**	**nomin a**
Voc.	**honor**	**honor es**	**nomen**	**nomin a**
Abl.	**honor e**	**honor ibus**	**nomin e**	**nomin ibus**

1. Masc. and fem. stems in **n** drop **n** in the nominative: as, **leo, leōnis**, *lion*; **ordo, ordĭnis**, *rank*.

2. Neuter stems in **ĕr, ŏr**, have the nom. in **ŭs**: as, **corpus, corpŏris**, *body*; **ŏpus, opĕris**, *work*. Those in **mĭn** change **i** to **ĕ**: as, **carmen, carmĭnis**, *song*.

3. Stems in **ter**, with a few in **ber**, drop **e** in declension: as, **păter, patris**, *father* (but **lăter, latĕris**, *brick*).

4. Most feminines of liquid stems end in **do, go**, gen. **-ĭnis**; or in **io**, gen. **-ōnis**: as, **ărundo, arundĭnis**, *reed*; **virgo, virgĭnis**, *maiden*; **occāsio, occasiōnis**, *opportunity*.

III. Mute Stems.

Nouns whose stem ends in a Mute generally form the nominative by adding **s**. If the stem ends in two consonants, the genitive plural generally has **ium**.

1. If the mute is a Labial (**b, p**), **s** is added simply, with or without change of vowel, as: —

	Sing. *City* (f.)	Plur.	Sing. *Chief* (m.)	Plur.
Nom.	**urb s**	**urb es**	**princep s**	**princĭp es**
Gen.	**urb is**	**urb ium**	**princĭp is**	**princip um**
Dat.	**urb i**	**urb ibus**	**princip i**	**princip ibus**
Acc.	**urb em**	**urb es**	**princip em**	**princip es**
Voc.	**urb s**	**urb es**	**princep s**	**princip es**
Abl.	**urb e**	**urb ibus**	**princip e**	**princip ibus**

Hiems (hiemps), hiĕmis, *winter*, is declined like **princeps**: it is the only noun whose stem ends in **m**.

2. If the mute is a Lingual (**d**, **t**), it is suppressed before **s**; in neuters, **s** is not added: as,

	Sing. *Companion* (m.)	Plur.	Sing. *Poem* (n.)	Plur.
Nom.	**cŏmĕs**	**comĭt es**	**poēma**	**poemăt a**
Gen.	**comĭt is**	**comit um**	**poemăt is**	**poemat um**
Dat.	**comit i**	**comit ibus**	**poemat i**	**poemat ibus**
Acc.	**comit em**	**comit es**	**poema**	**poemat a**
Voc.	**comes**	**comit es**	**poema**	**poemat a**
Abl.	**comit e**	**comit ibus**	**poemat e**	**poemat ibus**

Names in **as**, denoting birth or residence (patrials), — as **Urbīnas**, *of Urbinum*, — with a few others, have the gen. plural **-ium**.

3. If the mute is a Palatal (**c**, **g**), it unites with **s** in **x**: as,

	Sing. *King* (m.)	Plur.	Sing. *Peak* (m.)	Plur.	*Throat* (f.)
Nom.	**rex**	**rēg es**	**ăpex**	**apĭc es**	**fauc es**
Gen.	**rēg is**	**reg um**	**apĭc is**	**apic um**	**fauc ium**
Dat.	**reg i**	**reg ibus**	**apic i**	**apic ibus**	**fauc ibus**
Acc.	**reg em**	**reg es**	**apic em**	**apic es**	**fauc es**
Voc.	**rex**	**reg es**	**apex**	**apic es**	**fauc es**
Abl.	**reg e**	**reg ibus**	**apic e**	**apic ibus**	**fauc ibus**

4. Peculiar forms are the following: —

bōs, *ox*, *cow*, gen. **bŏvis**; plur. gen. **boum**, dat. **bōbus** or **būbus**.
cărо (f.), *flesh*, has **carnis**; **sĕnex**, *old man*, has **sĕnis**.
cĭnis, *ashes*, **pulvis**, *dust*, **vŏmis**, *ploughshare* (m.), have gen. **-ĕris**.
fĕl, *gall*, and **mĕl**, *honey* (n.), have the gen. **fellis**, **mellis**.
hērēs, *heir*, **mercēs** (f.), *pay*, have **-ēdis**; **pēs** (m.) *foot*, **pĕdis**.
ĭtĕr (n.), *journey*, has **itĭnĕris**; **căput** (n.), *head*, has **capitis**.
jĕcŭr (n.), *liver*, has **jecŏris**, or **jecĭnŏris**; **hēpar** has **hepătis**.
lāc (n.), *milk*, has gen. **lactis**; **alec**, *brine*, has **alēcis**.
nox (f.), *night*, has gen. **noctis**; **nix** (f.), *snow*, has **nĭvis**.
ōs (n.), *mouth*, has **ōris**; **ŏs** (n.) *bone*, **ossis**; **cor**, *heart* (n.) **cordis**.
pĕcus (n.), *cattle*, has gen. **-ŏris**; **pĕcus** (f.), *a sheep*, has **-ŭdis**.
sŭpellex (f.), *furniture*, has **supellectilis**.
Juppiter (**Jupiter**) has gen. **Jŏvis**.

Some Greek nouns have gen. sing. **-os**; acc. **-a** or **-n**; pl. nom. **-ĕs**; acc. **ăs**: as, **lampas**, *torch*, **lampădis** (**os**), **lampădem** (**a**), **lampadĕs**, **lampadās**. Those in **ys** have the acc. sing. **yn**.

Several Greek names in **o** (feminine) have gen. sing. **-ūs**, and belong more properly to the fourth declension; the other cases end in **o**; as, **Dido**, **Didūs** (or **-ōnis**), **Dido**, etc.

IV. Rules of Gender.

Masculine endings are **o, or, os, er, es** (lingual).

Feminine endings are **as, es** (vowel-stems), **is, ys, x, s** (following a consonant); also **do, go, io,** and **ūs** (increasing long).

Neuter endings are **a, e, i, y; c, l, n, t; ar, ur, ŭs** (increasing short).

The most important exceptions are: —

Masc. — **amnis,** *river;* **as,** *as;* **axis,** *axle;* **caulis,** *stalk;* **collis,** *hill;* **crīnis,** *hair;* **ensis,** *sword;* **fascis,** *bundle;* †**fīnis,** *end;* **fornix,** *arch;* †**fūnis,** *rope;* **ignis,** *fire;* **lăpis,** *stone;* **orbis,** *circle;* **mānes,** *the shades;* **mensis,** *month;* **pānis,** *bread;* **piscis,** *fish;* **postis,** *post;* †**pulvis,** *dust;* **sanguis,** *blood;* **sentis,** *brier;* **unguis,** *nail;* **vepres,** *bramble;* **sāl,** *salt;* **sōl,** *sun;* **ordo,** *order;* **dens,** *tooth;* **fons,** *fountain;* **mons,** *mountain;* **pons,** *bridge;* **rŭdens,** *cable;* †**calx,** *heel, lime;* †**cortex,** *bark;* **grex,** *herd;* **sĭlex,** *flint;* **cardo,** *hinge;* and names of material objects in **io.**

Fem. — **arbor,** *tree;* **căro,** *flesh;* **halcyon,** *kingfisher;* **compes,** *fetter;* **mercēs,** *reward;* **mergĕs,** *sheaf;* **quiēs,** *rest;* **sĕgĕs,** *crop;* **tĕgĕs,** *mat;* **cōs,** *whetstone;* **dōs,** *dowry;* **ēōs,** *dawn.*

Neut. — **ăcer,** *maple;* **cădāver,** *corpse;* **ĭter,** *journey;* **păpāver,** *poppy;* **ūber,** *udder;* **vēr,** *spring;* **verber,** *scourge;* **aequor,** *plain;* **cor,** *heart;* **marmor,** *marble;* **aes,** *copper.*

12. Fourth Declension. (u.)

	Sing. *Car* (m.)	Plur.	Sing. *Knee* (n.)	Plur.
Nom.	curr ŭs	curr ūs	gĕn u	gen ŭă
Gen.	curr ūs (uis)	curr uum	gen u (ūs)	gen uum
Dat.	curr ui (ū)	curr ĭbus	gen u	gen ĭbus
Acc.	curr um	curr ūs	gen u	gen ua
Voc.	curr us	curr us	gen u	gen ua
Abl.	curr u	curr ĭbus	gen u	gen ĭbus

1. Nouns in **us** are masculine: but **ăcus,** *needle;* **cŏlus,** *distaff;* **dŏmus,** *house;* **fīcus,** *fig;* **īdus,** *the Ides;* **mănus,** *hand;* **portĭcus,** *gallery;* **trĭbus,** *tribe,* are feminine.

2. **Dŏmus,** *house,* has abl. sing. **domo;** plural, gen., **domorum** or **domuum;** acc. **domos: domi,** less frequently **domui** (locative), means *at home.*

3, The following have the dat. and abl. plural in **ŭbus: artus,** *limb;* **partus,** *birth;* †**portus,** *harbor;* **trĭbus,** *tribe;* †**vĕru,** *spit;* with nouns in **cus:** as, **lăcus,** *lake.*

4. Most nouns of the fourth declension are formed from the Supine stem of verbs: as, **cantus,** *song* (**căno**).

† Sometimes.

13. Fifth Declension (e).

The only complete nouns of this declension are **dies**, *day*, and **res**, *thing*. All, except **dies**, are feminine.

	Sing. *Thing* (f.)	Plur.	*Poverty.*
Nom.	rē s	rē s	paupĕri ēs
Gen.	rĕi	rē rum	pauperi ēi
Dat.	rĕi	rē bus	pauperi ēi
Acc.	re m	re s	pauperi em
Voc.	re s	re s	pauperi es
Abl.	re	re bus	pauperi ē

1. Most nouns of the Fifth Declension want the plural.

2. **Dies**, *day*, is sometimes feminine in the singular, especially in phrases indicating a fixed time: as, **constitutā die**, *on the set day*.

3. The termination of the nominative singular is always **ies**, except in **fĭdes**, *faith*; **plēbes**, *commonalty*; **res**, *thing*; **spes**, *hope*.

14. Irregular Nouns.

1. Wanting the Singular: as,

lĭbĕri, *children*; **arma**, *weapons*; **pĕnātes**, *household gods*.

So the names of Festivals: as, **Sāturnālia**, *Feast of Saturn*; **Quinquātrus** (gen. **-uum**), *of Minerva*. Also, many names of towns: as, **Vēii**, **Syracūsae**, **Ecbătăna**.

2. Wanting the nominative: as,

dăpis, *of food*; **frūgis**, *of fruit* (plural complete).

3. Found only in one or two cases: as,

fors, **forte**, *chance*; **vĭcis** (gen.), **vicem**, **vice**, **vices**, **vicibus**, *change* or *turn*; **sponte** (**suā sponte**, *of his own accord*); **injussu**, *without orders*.

4. Indeclinable (neuters): as,

fās, *right*; **nĕfās**, *wrong*; **pondō**, *pound*.

5. Some nouns have two or more forms of declension, and are called *Heteroclites*: as,

margărīta, **-ae** (f.), or **um**, **-i** (n.), *a pearl*. This occurs with several of the fifth declension: as, **mātĕries**, **-ēi**; **a**, **-ae**, *material*: **saevĭties**, **-ēi**; **saevĭtia**, **-ae**; **saevĭtūdo**, **-ĭnis**, *cruelty*.

II. Variable.

1. Many nouns vary in meaning as they are found in the singular or plural; some also in gender (*heterogeneous*): as,

aedes, is (F.), *temple.*	**aedes, ium**, *house.*
auxĭlium (N.), *help.*	**auxilia**, *auxiliaries.*
carcer (M.), *dungeon.*	**carcĕres**, *barriers* (of a race-
castrum (N.), *fort.*	**castra**, *camp.* [course.)
cōpia (F.), *plenty.*	**copiae**, *troops.*
fīnis (M.), *end.*	**fines**, *bounds, territory.*
grātia (F.), *favor.*	**gratiae**, *thanks.*
impĕdīmentum (N.), *hinderance.*	**impedimenta**, *baggage.*
littĕra (F.), *letter* (of alphabet).	**litterae**, *epistle.*
lŏcus (M.), *place* [pl. **loca** (N.)].	**loci**, *passages in books.*
ŏpis (F. gen.), *help.*	**opes**, *resources, wealth.*
plăga (F.), *region* [**plāga**, *blow*].	**plăgae**, *snares.*
săl (M. or N.), *salt.*	**săles**, *witticisms.*

sestertius (M.) means the sum of 2½ **asses**, = about 4 cents.
sestertium (N.) means the sum of 1000 **sestertii**, = about $40.
decies sestertium means the sum of 1000 **sestertia**, = $40,000.

2. Sometimes a noun in combination with an adjective takes a special signification, both parts being regularly inflected: as,

jusjūrandum, jūrisjurandi, *oath.*
respublica, reipublicae, *commonwealth.*

15. Proper Names.

A Roman had regularly three names. Thus, in the name Marcus Tullius Cicero, we have —

Marcus, the **praenōmen**, or personal name;

Tullius, the **nomen**; i.e., name of the Gens, or house, whose original head was **Tullus**; this name is an adjective;

Cicero, the **cognomen**, or family name, often in its origin a nickname, — in this case from **cĭcer**, a *vetch*, or small pea.

Women had no personal names, but were known only by that of their gens. Thus the wife of Cicero was Terentia, and his daughter Tullia. A younger sister would have been called Tullia secunda (or minor), and so on.

Names of the Months are Adjectives in Latin.

Table 1.

Inflection of Nouns.

1. *Vowel Stems.*

Sing.	I.	II.		III.		IV.	V.
	Wing, F.	*Grandfather*, M.	*Boar*, M.	*Bird*, F.	*Bag*, M.	*Lake*, M.	*Day*, M.
N.	a'la	a'vus	a'per	a'vis	u'ter	la'cus	di'es
G.	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'vis	u'tris	la'cus	die'i
D.	a'læ	a'vo	a'pro	a'vi	u'tri	lac'ui	die'i
A.	a'lam	a'vum	a'prum	a'vem	u'trem	la'cum	di'em
V.	a'la	a've	a'per	a'vis	u'ter	la'cus	di'es
A.	a'la	a'vo	a'pro	a've	u'tre	la'cu	di'e
Plur.							
N.	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'ves	u'tres	la'cus	di'es
G.	ala'rum	avo'rum	apro'rum	a'vium	u'trium	lac'uum	die'rum
D.	a'lis	a'vis	a'pris	av'ibus	u'tribus	lac'ubus	die'bus
A.	a'las	a'vos	a'pros	a'ves(is)	u'tres(is)	la'cus	di'es
V	a'læ	a'vi	a'pri	a'ves	u'tres	la'cus	di'es
A.	a'lis	a'vis	a'pris	av'ibus	u'tribus	lac'ubus	die'bus

Sing.	I.	II.	III.		IV.
	Comet, M.	*Cave*, N.	*Net*, N.	*Spur*, N.	*Horn*, N.
N.	come'tes	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu
G.	come'tæ	an'tri	re'tis	calca'ris	cor'nu (us)
D.	come'tæ	an'tro	re'ti	calca'ri	cor'nu
A	come'ten	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu
V.	come'ta	an'trum	re'te	cal'car	cor'nu
A.	come'ta	an'tro	re'ti	calca'ri	cor'nu
Plur.					
N.	come'tæ	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua
G.	cometa'rum	antro'rum	re'tium	calca'rium	cor'nuum
D.	come'tis	an'tris	ret'ibus	calcar'ibus	cor'nibus
A.	come'tas	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua
V.	come'tæ	an'tra	re'tia	calca'ria	cor'nua
A.	come'tis	an'tris	ret'ibus	calcar'ibus	cor'nibus

2. *Consonant Stems.*

Sing.	*Consul*, M.	*Lion*, M.	*Father*, M.	*Tree*, F.	*Army*, N.	*Burden*, N.
N.	con'sul	le'o	pa'ter	ar'bor	ag'men	o'nus
G.	con'sulis	leo'nis	pa'tris	ar'boris	ag'minis	on'eris
D.	con'suli	leo'ni	pa'tri	ar'bori	ag'mini	on'eri
A.	con'sulem	leo'nem	pa'trem	ar'borem	ag'men	o'nus
V.	con'sul	le'o	pa'ter	ar'bor	ag'men	o'nus
A.	con'sule	leo'ne	pa'tre	ar'bore	ag'mine	on'ere
Plur.						
N.	con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	ag'mina	on'era
G.	con'sulum	leo'num	pa'trum	ar'borum	ag'minum	on'erum
D.	consu'libus	leon'ibus	pat'ribus	arbor'ibus	agmin'ibus	oner'ibus
A.	con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	ag'mina	on'era
V.	con'sules	leo'nes	pa'tres	ar'bores	ag'mina	on'era
A.	consu'libus	leon'ibus	pat'ribus	arbor'ibus	agmin'ibus	oner'ibus

Sing.	*Beam*, F.	*Wealth*, F.	*Age*, F.	*Art*, F.	*Light*, F.	*Journey*, N.
N.	trabs	(ops)	æ'tas	ars	lux	i'ter
G	tra'bis	o'pis	æta'tis	ar'tis	lu'cis	itin'eris
D.	tra'bi	o'pi	æta'ti	ar'ti	lu'ci	itin'eri
A.	tra'bem	opem	æta'tem	ar'tem	lu'cem	i'ter
V.	trabs	(ops)	æ'tas	ars	lux	i'ter
A.	tra'be	o'pe	æta'te	ar'te	lu'ce	itin'ere
Plur.						
N.	tra'bes	o'pes	æta'tes	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
G.	tra'bium	o'pum	æta'tum	ar'tium	lu'cum	itin'erum
D.	trab'ibus	op'ibus	ætat'ibus	ar'tibus	lu'cibus	itiner'ibus
A.	tra'bes	o'pes	æta'tes	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
V.	tra'bes	o'pes	æta'tes	ar'tes	lu'ces	itin'era
A.	trab'ibus	op'ibus	ætat'ibus	ar'tibus	lu'cibus	itiner'ibus

Table 2.

Terminations of Nouns.

Decl. I. (a)	II. (o)	III. (i)	IV. (u)	V. (e)
N. a, *ē*, *as*, *es*	us, *ŏs*, *eus*, um, *ŏn*	s, is, es er, e, al, ar	us, u *ū*	es
G. ae (ai), *es*	i (ius), *ei* *o*	is, *ŏs*	us (uis) *ūs*	ei (e)
D. ae (ai)	o (i)	i	ui (u) *o*	ei (e)
A. am, *an*, *en*	um, *on*, *ea*	em (im), *in* *yn* *ă*	um *o*	em
V. a, *e*	e (i), *eu*	(as nom.) ĭ *y*	us *o*	*ēs*
A. a, *e*	o	e (i), i	u *o*	e
Plural.				
N.V. ae	i a	es, a, ia *ēs*	us, ua	es
G. arum (um)	orum (um, om), *ŏn*	um, ium	uum	erum
D.A. is (abus)	is (obus)	ibus	ibus (ubus)	ebus
A. as	os, a	es (is), ia *ās*	us, ua	es

1. Unusual forms are in parenthesis; Greek forms in *Italics*.

2. In the Second Declension, when the stem ends in **er**, **ir**, the terminations of the nom. and voc. singular are not added.

3. In vowel-stems of the Third Declension, the characteristic vowel (**i**) is in several of the cases absorbed in the termination; but it remains in the gen. pl. **ium**, and in some words in the acc. and abl. sing. **im**, **i**, and the acc. plur. **is** (**eis**).

4. The accusative **im** and abl. **i** are found in names of rivers in **is**; also in **ămussis**, † **ăquālis**, **būris**, **cannăbis**, † **clāvis**, † **febris**, **mĕphītis**, † **messis**, † **nāvis**, **pelvis**, **praesēpis**, † **puppis**, **rāvis**, † **restis**, **sĕcūris**, † **sēmentis**, **sĭtis**, † **strĭgĭlis**, † **turris**, **tussis**, **vis**.

5. The following also have the abl. sometimes in **i**: **amnis**, **civis**, **finis**, **fustis**, **ignis**, **imber**, **orbis**.

6. The gen. plur. **ium** is found (rarely with acc. pl. in **is**), in—

a. Vowel-stems, including neuters in **al** and **ar**, and the masculines **imber**, **linter**, **ūter**, **venter**: — except **ăpis**, **cănis**, **fŏris**, **jŭvĕnis**, **mūgĭlis**, **prōles**, **strĭgĭlis**, **strues**, **vātes**, and **vŏlucris**, and occasionally a few others, which have **um**;

b. Mute-stems ending in two consonants, except some in **nt**;

c. Local names (adjectives) in **as**, as **nostras**, *of our country*; also **Quīris**, **Samnis**, **Penātes**, **optĭmātes**, and sometimes other nouns in **as**, as **ætas**, **civitas**;

d. And the following: — **dos**, **fauces**, † **fraus**, † **fur**, **glis**, † **lar lis**, **mas**, † **mus**, **nix**, † **ren**, **strix**, **trabs**, **vis**.

7. Nouns in **io**, abstract and collective, — as **rătio**, *reason*; **lĕgio**, *legion*, — are feminine. The following, denoting material objects, are masculine: — **curcŭlio**, *weevil*; **păpĭlio** *butterfly*; **pŭgio**, *dagger*; **scīpio**, *staff*; **septemtrio**, *the north*; **stellio**, *lizard*; **struthio**, *ostrich*; **tĭtio**, *firebrand*; **unio**, *pearl*; **vespertilio**, *bat*.

8. The following in **ūs** are feminine: — **incus**, *anvil*: **jŭventus**, *youth*; **pălus**, *marsh*; **pĕcūs**, *sheep*; **sălus**, *safety*; **sĕnectus**, *old age*; **servĭtus**, *slavery*; **subscus**, *dovetail*; **tellus**, *earth*; **virtus**, *virtue*.

† Sometimes.

ADJECTIVES.

16. Inflection.

Adjectives are declined like Nouns; and are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third.

I. Adjectives of the first and second declension are thus declined: —

	M.	F.	N.
Sing. N.	**cār ŭs**	**cār ă**	**cār um**, *Dear.*
G.	**car ī**	**car ae**	**car ī**
D.	**car ō**	**car ae**	**car ō**
Ac.	**car um**	**car am**	**car um**
V.	**carĕ**	**car ă**	**car um**
Ab.	**car ō**	**car ā**	**car ō**
Plur. N.	**car ī**	**car ae**	**car ă**
G.	**car ōrum**	**car ārum**	**car ōrum**
D.	**car īs**	**car īs**	**car īs**
Ac.	**car ōs**	**car ās**	**car ă**
V.	**car ī**	**car ae**	**car ă**
Ab	**car īs**	**car īs**	**car īs**

Like **carus** are declined most adjectives, and all participles, ending in **us**. In adjectives ending in **er**, the masculine is declined like **puer**, or **liber** (§ **10**): as,

M. **mĭser**, F. **misera**, N. **miserum**, gen., **miseri**, etc., *wretched.*
ăter **atra** **atrum** " **atri** " *black.*

The following have the genitive singular in **īus**, and the dative in **ī**, in all the genders (See **sōlus, T. 3**): —

ălius (N. **aliud**), *other.* **nullus**, *no;* **ullus**, *any* (with negatives).
alter, *other* (of two). **sōlus**, *alone.* **ūnus**, *one.*
neuter, **-trius** *neither.* **tōtus**, *whole.* **ŭter**, **-trius** *which* (of two).

alius has gen. **alīus**, dat. **alii**; **alter** has **altĕrius**, **alteri**.

II. Adjectives of the third declension are thus declined: —

	VOWEL-STEMS.	CONSONANT-STEMS.	COMPARATIVES.
		SINGULAR.	
	M., F. *Smooth.* N.	M., F. *Crazy.* N.	M., F. *Dearer.* N.
N.	lēvis lēve	āmens	cārior cārius
G.	levis	amentis	cariōris
D.	levi	amenti	cariori
Ac.	levem leve	amentem amens	cariorem carius
V.	levis leve	amens	carior carius
Ab.	levi	amente, or i	cariore, or i
		PLURAL.	
N.	leves levia	amentes amentia	cariores cariora
G.	levium	amentium	cariorum
D.	levibus	amentibus	carioribus
Ac.	leves levia	amentes amentia	cariores cariora
V.	leves levia	amentes amentia	cariores cariora
Ab.	levibus	amentibus	carioribus

1. Adjectives of vowel-stems end in **is** (M., F.), and **e** (N.), and are called adjectives of two terminations. They have the abl. in **i**, and gen. pl. **ium**, and are declined like **nāvis** and **mare** (§ **11**, I.). A few have also a masc. nom. in **er** (declined like **uter**, **T. 1**), and are called adjectives of three terminations.

2. In adjectives of consonant-stems, — sometimes called adjectives of one termination, — the three genders are alike in all the cases except the acc. singular, and the nom. and acc. plural. The most common termination of the nominative is **ns** or **x**, the former including the present participle of all verbs. The abl. sing. ends in **e** or **i**, and the gen. plur. in **ium** (rarely contracted into **um**), except in those of liquid stems, with a few others.

17. Comparison.

I. The Comparative degree adds **ior, ius** to the stem, and is declined as **carior**; the Superlative adds **issĭmus, a, um**, and is declined as **carus**. Thus: —

car us, *dear;* **car ior**, *dearer;* **car issĭmus**, *dearest.*

1. Adjectives in **er** form the superlative by adding **rimus** to the nominative: as,

nĭger, *black*: **nigrior**, *blacker;* **nigerrĭmus**, *blackest.*

2. Six adjectives, **făcĭlis, difficilis**, *easy, hard;* **sĭmĭlis, dissimilis**, *like, unlike;* **grăcĭlis**, *slender;* **hŭmĭlis**, *low*, form the superlative by adding **-lĭmus** to the stem: as, **facillimus**, *easiest.*

3. Compounds in **-dĭcus**, *saying;* **-fĭcus**, *doing;* **-vŏlus**, *willing*, are compared as if from corresponding participles in **-ns**: as, **mălĕdĭcus**, *slanderous*, **maledīcentior, maledicentissimus;** **maleficus**, *mischievous*, **maleficentior, maleficentissimus;** **malevolus**, *spiteful*, **malevolentior, malevolentissimus.**

4. Adjectives in **us** preceded by a vowel, are generally compared by means of the adverbs **măgis**, *more*, and **maxĭmē**, *most:* as, **ĭdōneus**, *fit;* **magis idoneus, maxime idoneus.**

II. The following are compared irregularly: —

bŏnus, mĕlior, optĭmus, *good, better, best.*
mălus, pējor, pessimus, *bad, worse, worst.*
magnus, mājŏr, maximus, *great, greater, greatest.*
parvus, mĭnŏr, minimus, *small, less, least.*
multum, plūs, (N.) **plurimum**, *much, more, most.*
multi, plūres, plurimi, *many, more, most.*
nēquam (indecl.), **nequior, nequissimus**, *worthless.*
frūgi (indecl.), **frugālior, frugalissimus**, *useful, worthy.*
dexter, dextĕrior, dextĭmus, *on the right, handy.*

III. The following comparatives and superlatives, denoting order in place or time, are formed from certain prepositions: —

[**citrā**, *this side*] **cĭtĕrior, citĭmus**, *nearer, nearest.*
[**extrā**, *outside*] **extĕrior, extrēmus**, *outer, outmost.*
[**infrā**, *below*] **infĕrior, infimus** or **īmus**, *lower, lowest.*
[**intrā**, *within*] **intĕrior, intĭmus**, *inner, inmost.*
[**post**, *after*] **postĕrior, postrēmus** or **postŭmus**, *latter, last.*
[**prae**, *before*] **prĭor, prīmus**, *former, first.*
[**prŏpĕ**, *near*] **propior, proximus**, *nearer, next.*
[**suprā**, *above*] **sŭpĕrior, suprēmus** or **summus**, *higher, highest.*
[**ultrā**, *beyond*] **ultĕrior, ultĭmus**, *farther, farthest.*

The positives **infĕrus, extĕrus**, &c., are rarely used as adjectives. But the plurals **extĕri**, *foreigners;* **postĕri**, *posterity;* **supĕri**, *the heavenly gods*, and **infĕri**, *those below*, are common.

From the nouns **jŭvĕnis**, *youth*, **sĕnex**, *old man*, are formed the comparatives **jūnior**, *younger*, **senior**, *older.* For the super-

lative the phrase **minimus** or **maximus natu** is used, the noun **natu** being often understood: as,

maximus fratrum, *the eldest of the brothers.*
senior fratrum would mean *the elder of the two.*

IV. Some adjectives want the positive: as,

dētĕrior, deterrĭmus, *worse, worst.*
ōcior, ocissimus, *swifter, swiftest.*
pŏtior, potissimus, *more*, and *most preferable* [**pŏtis**, *able*].

Some want the comparative: as,

falsus, falsissimus, *false, most false.*
inclĭtus (inclŭtus), inclitissimus, *famous.*
nŏvus, novissimus, *new, newest* or *last* (as in **novissimum agmen**, *the rear-guard*).
pauper, pauperrimus, *poor.*
săcer, sacerrimus, *sacred.*
vĕtus, veterrimus, *old.*

Some want the superlative: as,

ălăcer, alacrior, *eager.*
ingens, ingentior, *huge.*
ŏpīmus, opimior, *rich.*

V. 1. The Comparative often denotes a considerable or excessive degree of a quality: as, **brĕvior**, *rather short;* **audācior**, *too bold.* It is used instead of the superlative where only two are spoken of: as,

mĕlior imperatorum, *the best of the (two) commanders.*

2. The comparative takes the ablative, or **quam**, *than*: as,

tribus unciis altior est fratre (or **quam frater**), *he is three inches taller than his brother.* (See § **54**, v.)

3. Comparison between adjectives is expressed by comparatives with **quam**: as,

lātius quam altius est flūmen, *the stream is rather broad than deep.*

4. The Superlative (of eminence) often denotes a very high degree of a quality: as, **maximus numerus**, *a very great number;* **optimus quisque**, *all the best.*

5. The superlative with **quam** indicates the very highest degree of a quality: as, **quam plurimi**, *as many as possible.*

Table 3.

Inflection of Adjectives. — I.

First and Second Declension.

	Bonus, *good.*			Solus, *alone, only.*		
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	bo'nus	bo'na	bo'num	so'lus	so'la	so'lum
G.	bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'ni	soli'us	soli'us	soli'us
D.	bo'no	bo'næ	bo'no	so'li	so'li	so'li
A.	bo'num	bo'nam	bo'num	so'lum	so'lam	so'lum
V.	bo'ne	bo'na	bo'num	so'le	so'la	so'lum
A.	bo'no	bo'na	bo'no	so'lo	so'la	so'lo
Plur.						
N.	bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'na	so'li	so'læ	so'la
G.	bono'rum	bona'rum	bono'rum	solo'rum	sola'rum	solo'rum
D.	bo'nis	bo'nis	bo'nis	so'lis	so'lis	so'lis
A.	bo'nos	bo'nas	bo'na	so'los	so'las	so'la
V.	bo'ni	bo'næ	bo'na	so'li	so'læ	so'la
A.	bo'nis	bo'nis	bo'nis	so'lis	so'lis	so'lis

	Miser, *wretched.*			Ater, *black.*		
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	mi'ser	mis'era	mis'erum	a'ter	a'tra	a'trum
G.	mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'eri	a'tri	a'træ	a'tri
D.	mis'ero	mis'eræ	mis'ero	a'tro	a'træ	a'tro
A.	mis'erum	mis'eram	mis'erum	a'trum	a'trum	a'trum
V.	mi'ser	mis'era	mis'erum	a'ter	a'tra	a'trum
A.	mis'ero	mis'era	mis'ero	a'tro	a'tra	a'tro
Plur.						
N.	mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'era	a'tri	a'træ	a'tra
G.	misero'rum	misera'rum	misero'rum	atro'rum	atra'rum	atro'rum
D.	mis'eris	mis'eris	mis'eris	a'tris	a'tris	a'tris
A.	mis'eros	mis'eras	mis'era	a'tros	a'tras	a'tra
V.	mis'eri	mis'eræ	mis'era	a'tri	a'træ	a'tra
A.	mis'eris	mis'eris	mis'eris	a'tris	a'tris	a'tris

Third Declension.

1. Adjectives of Two and Three Terminations (*Vowel Stems*).

	Facilis, *easy.*			Celeber, *famous.*		
Sing.	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ile	cel'eber	cel'ebris	cel'ebre
G.	fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ilis	cel'ebris	cel'ebris	cel'ebris
D.	fac'ili	fac'ili	fac'ili	cel'ebri	cel'ebri	cel'ebri
A.	fac'ilem	fac'ilem	fac'ile	cel'ebrem	cel'ebrem	cel'ebre
V.	fac'ilis	fac'ilis	fac'ile	cel'eber	cel'ebris	cel'ebre
A.	fac'ili	fac'ili	fac'ili	cel'ebri	cel'ebri	cel'ebri
Plur.						
N.	fac'iles	fac'iles	facil'ia	cel'ebres	cel'ebres	cele'bria
G.	facil'ium	facil'ium	facil'ium	cele'brium	cele'brium	cele'brium
D.	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus
N.	fac'iles(is)	fac'iles(is)	facil'ia	cel'ebres(is)	cel'ebres(is)	cele'bria
N.	fac'iles	fac'iles	facil'ia	cel'ebres	cel'ebres	cele'bria
D.	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	facil'ibus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus	cele'bribus

Like **celĕber** are declined **acer**, *keen;* **alăcer**, *eager;* **campester**, *of the field;* **equester**, *of horsemen;* **paluster**, *marshy;* **pedester**, *on foot;* **puter**, *rotten;* **salūber**, *wholesome;* **silvester**, *wooded;* **terrester**, *of the land;* **volŭcer**, *winged;* also, **celer**, **celĕris**, **celere**, *swift.*

Table 4.

Inflection of Adjectives. — II.

Adjectives of One Termination (*Consonant Stems*).

Sing.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.	u'ber, *fertile*		ve'tus, *old*		par, *equal*	
G.	u'beris		vet'eris		pa'ris	
D.	u'beri		vet'eri		pa'ri	
A.	u'berem	u'ber	vet'erem	ve'tus	pa'rem	par
V.	u'ber		ve'tus		par	
A.	u'bere (i)		vet'ere (i)		pari	
Plu.						
N.	u'beres	u'bera	vet'eres	vet'era	pa'res	pa'ria
G.	u'berum		vet'erum		pa'rium	
D.	uber'ibus		veter'ibus		par'ibus	
A.	u'beres	u'bera	vet'eres	vet'era	pa'res	pa'ria
V.	u'beres	u'bera	vet'eres	vet'era	pa'res	pa'ria
A.	uber'ibus		veter'ibus		par'ibus	

Plu.	M. F.	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.	in'ops, *poor*	sos'pes, *safe*	di'ves, *rich*	e'dax, *greedy*	
G.	in'opis	sos'pitis	div'itis	eda'cis	
D.	in'opi	sos'piti	div'iti	eda'ci	
A.	in'opem	sos'pitem	div'item	di'ves	eda'cem	e'dax
V.	in'ops	sos'pes	di'ves	e'dax	
A.	in'opi	sos'pite	div'ite (i)	eda'ci	
Sing.					
N.	in'opes	sos'pites	div'ites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia
G.	in'opum	sos'pitum	di'vitum	eda'cium	
D.	inop'ibus	sospit'ibus	divit'ibus	edac'ibus	
A.	in'opes	sos'pites	div'ites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia
V.	in'opes	sos'pites	div'ites (ditia)	eda'ces	eda'cia
A.	inop'ibus	sospit'ibus	divit'ibus	edac'ibus	

Sing.	Participles.		Comparatives.	
	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
N.	a'mans, *loving*	i'ens, *going*	al'tior	al'tius, *higher*
G.	aman'tis	eun'tis	altio'ris	
D.	aman'ti	eun'ti	altio'ri	
A.	aman'tem a'mans	eun'tem i'ens	altio'rem	al'tius
V.	a'mans	i'ens	al'tior	al'tius
A.	aman'te (i)	eun'te (i)	altio're (i)	
Plur.				
N.	aman'tes aman'tia	eun'tes eun'tia	altio'res	altio'ra
G.	aman'tium (um)	eun'tium	altio'rum	
D.	aman'tibus	eun'tibus	altior'ibus	
A.	aman'tes aman'tia	eun'tes eun'tia	altio'res	altio'ra
V.	aman'tes aman'tia	eun'tes eun'tia	altio'res	altio'ra
A.	aman'tibus	eun'tibus	altior'ibus	

The ablative singular commonly ends in **i**. Many adjectives, as, **inops**, have only **i**; some, as **sospĕs**, only **e**. Comparatives, and participles in **ns**, when used as participles, have usually **e**; so also have adjectives used as nouns, as **inops**, *a poor man*, **inŏpe**.

Liquid stems, and a few mute stems, as **dīves, inops, supplex, particeps**, with those that have abl. sing. **e**, have gen. pl. **um**.

Some adjectives, as **inops, sospes**, are found only in the masc. and fem., and may be called adjectives of Common Gender.

Plus, *more* (N.), has gen. **plūris**; plur., nom. **plures, plura**; gen. **plurium**, etc.: **complūres**, *several*, has sometimes neut. pl. **compluria**. All other comparatives are declined like **altior**.

18. Numerals.

I. Cardinal and Ordinal.

1.	**ūnus, una, unum**	**prīmus a um,** *first*	I.
2.	**duŏ, duae, duo**	**sĕcundus, alter,** *second*	II.
3.	**trēs, tria**	**tertius,** *third*	III.
4.	**quattuŏr**	**quartus,** *fourth*	IV.
5.	**quinquĕ**	**quintus**	V.
6.	**sex**	**sextus**	VI.
7.	**septem**	**septĭmus**	VII.
8.	**octŏ**	**octāvus**	VIII.
9.	**nŏvem**	**nōnus**	IX.
10.	**dĕcem**	**dĕcĭmus**	X.
11.	**undĕcim**	**undĕcĭmus**	XI.
12.	**duŏdecim**	**duŏdĕcĭmus**	XII.
13.	**tredecim**	**tertius decimus**	XIII.
14.	**quattuordecim**	**quartus decimus**	XIV.
15.	**quindecim**	**quintus decimus**	XV.
16.	**sēdecim**	**sextus decimus**	XVI.
17.	**septendecim**	**septimus decimus**	XVII.
18.	**duŏdēvīginti, octo-**	**duodevīcesĭmus**	XVIII.
19.	**undēvīginti [decim**	**undēvīcesimus**	XIX.
20.	**vīginti**	**vīcēsĭmus (vigesimus)**	XX.
21.	**viginti unus,** *or* **unus**	**vīcesimus primus**	XXI.
30.	**trīgintā [et vig.**	**trīcēsĭmus**	XXX.
40.	**quadrāgintā**	**quadrāgesimus**	XL.
50.	**quinquāgintā**	**quinquāgesimus**	Ⅼ or L.
60.	**sexāgintā**	**sexāgesimus**	LX.
70.	**septuāgintā**	**septuāgesimus**	LXX.
80.	**octōgintā**	**octōgesimus**	LXXX.
90.	**nōnāgintā**	**nōnāgesimus**	XC.
100.	**centum**	**centesimus**	C.
200.	**dŭcenti, ae, ă**	**dŭcentesimus**	CC.
300.	**trĕcenti**	**trĕcentesimus**	CCC.
400.	**quadringenti**	**quadringentesimus**	CCCC.
500.	**quingenti**	**quingentesimus**	ⅠↃ, *or* D.
600.	**sexcenti**	**sexcentesimus**	DC.
700.	**septingenti**	**septingentesimus**	DCC.
800.	**octingenti**	**octingentesimus**	DCCC.
900.	**nongenti**	**nongentesimus**	DCCCC.
1000.	**mille**	**millēsimus**	CIↃ, *or* M.
10,000.	**decem mīlia**	**decies millesimus**	CCIↃↃ.

1. **Unus a um** has genitive **unīus**, dative **uni** (§ **16**, L).

2. **Duo** (also **ambo**, *both*) is thus declined: —

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**
Gen.	**duorum**	**duarum**	**duorum**
D. Ab.	**duobus**	**duabus**	**duobus**
Ac.	**duos, duo**	**duas**	**duo**

3. **Tres** is declined regularly, like the plural of **brevis** (§**16**). The other cardinal numbers up to **centum** (100) are indeclinable. **Mille** is indeclinable as an adjective; but when several thousands are spoken of, the noun **mīlia** is used, declined like the plural of **mare** (§ **11**, L), the noun described being put in the genitive plural: as, **cum decem milibus mīlĭtum**, *with ten thousand men*.

4. The numeral adverbs are: **sĕmĕl**, *once*; **bĭs**, *twice*; **tĕr**, *thrice*; **quătĕr**, *four times*. Those of higher numbers end in **iens** or **iēs**: as, **quinquiens** (or **quinquies**), **decies, milies**, &c.

II. Distributive.

1.	**singŭli**	12.	**duŏdēni**	200.	**dŭcēni**
2.	**bīni**	13.	**terni dēni**, &c.	300.	**trĕcēni**
3.	**terni, trīni**	20.	**vīcēni**	400.	**quădringēni**
4.	**quăterni**	30.	**trīcēni**	500.	**quingēni**
5.	**quīni**	40.	**quădrāgēni**	600.	**sescēni**
6.	**sēni**	50.	**quinquagēni**	700.	**septingēni**
7.	**septēni**	60.	**sexāgēni**	800.	**octingēni**
8.	**octōni**	70.	**septuāgēni**	900.	**nongēni**
9.	**nŏvēni**	80.	**octōgēni**	1000.	**millēni**
10.	**dēni**	90.	**nōnāgēni**	2000.	**bis milleni**
11.	**undēni**	100.	**centēni**	10,000.	**decies milleni**

Distributives are used, —

1. As in the phrase **singulas binis navibus obiciēbant**, *they matched the ships one against every two*. — Cæs. B.C., I. 58.

2. Instead of cardinals, when the noun is plural in form but singular in meaning: as, **bina castra**, *two camps*: (**duo castra** would mean *two forts*): but **una castra**, *one camp*.

3. In multiplication: as, **bis bīna**, *twice two*; **quater septēnis diebus**; i.e., *in four weeks*.

PRONOUNS.

19. Personal and Reflective.

I. The personal pronouns **ego**, *I*, and **tu**, *thou*, are thus declined: —

		FIRST PERSON. *I.*	SECOND PERSON. *thou* (*you.*)
SING.	N.	**ĕgŏ**	**tū**
	G.	**meī**	**tŭī**
	D.	**mĭhi (mī)**	**tĭbi**
	Ac.	**mē**	**tē**
	Ab.	**mē**	**tē**
PLUR.	N. Ac.	**nōs**	**vōs**
	G.	**nostrum** / **nostrī**	**vestrum (vostrum)** / **vestrī (vostri)**
	D. Ab.	**nōbīs**	**vōbīs**

II. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are used also reflectively: as,

ipse te laudās, *you praise yourself.*

The reflective pronoun of the third person, *himself, herself, themselves*, is thus declined: —

G. **suī** D. **sĭbi** Ac. and Ab. **sē**, or **sēsē**

It regularly refers to the subject of the sentence or clause.

III. The genitives **nostrum, vestrum**, are used partitively: as, **unusquisque vestrum**, *each one of you;* **mei, tui, sui, nostri** and **vestri** are used objectively (See § **50**, III.): as, **mĕmŏr sis nostri**, *be mindful of us.*

For the genitive of possession, the adjective pronouns **meus** (voc. masc. **mi**), **tuus, suus, noster, vester,** are always used, declined as in **§ 16,** I.: as, **mi fīli,** *my son;* **cum amīcis meis,** *with my friends.*

They agree with genitives in such phrases as **tuam ipsīus patriam prodidisti,** *you have betrayed your own fatherland;* **suo sōlīus perīcŭlo,** *at his own peril only.* — Cic. Cat., IV. 11.

The preposition **cum,** *with,* is joined *enclitically* with the ablative of the personal pronouns: thus,
nobiscum ambŭlat, *he is walking with us.*

The enclitics **-ce, -met, -pte,** are emphatic.

20. Demonstrative.

I. The demonstrative pronouns **hic,** *this;* **is, iste, ille,** *that;* and **ipse,** *self,* are thus declined: —

SINGULAR.

N.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**ĭs**	**eă**	**ĭd**
G.		**hūjŭs**			**ējus**	
D.		**huic**			**eī**	
Ac.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**eum**	**eam**	**ĭd**
Ab.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**

PLURAL.

N.	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**	**iī (eī)**	**eae**	**eă**
G.	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
D. Ab.		**hīs**		**eīs or iīs**		
Ac.	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**	**eōs**	**eās**	**eă**
Ab.		**hīs**		**eīs or iīs**		

The Demontratives **iste, ista, istud;** **ille, illa, illud,** *that;* **ipse, ipsa, ipsum,** *self,* have gen. **ius,** dat. **i**: otherwise, they are declined like **carus,** but with neut. acc. like the nominative (**T. 5**).

II. **Hic** is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person; **iste** (used especially in reference to the person spoken to, and frequently implying contempt), the demonstrative of the second person; **ille** (referring to more remote objects, and used especially of those celebrated or well known), the demonstrative of the third person. **Ille** and **hic** are often used as "the former" and "the latter." **Hic,** or **hic hŏmo,** is sometimes equivalent to **ego,** *I:* as, **tu si hic sis,** *if you were I.* — Ter. Andr. II. 1. **ille** has an old form **ollus.**

Is is used especially in reference to something just mentioned, or as antecedent to the relative **qui**, *who*. It is used oftener than the other demonstratives as a personal pronoun of the third person, and is sometimes nearly equivalent to the article *a* or *the*: as,

eum quem esse hostem compĕristi, *one whom you have found to be a public enemy*. — Cic. Cat. I. 11.

habētis eum consŭlem qui ... non dubĭtet, *you have a consul who will not hesitate*. — Id. IV. 11.

Ipse, *self*, the intensive pronoun, is frequently joined with another pronoun: as, **nos ipsi**, or **nosmetipsi**, *we ourselves*; or it may be used independently in either person: as, **ipsi adestis**, *you are yourselves present*. Often it may be translated *very*: as, **ipsi colles clāmant**, *the very hills cry out*.

Īdem, eădem, ĭdem, *the same*, is declined like **is**; **m** being generally changed to **n** before **d**, as in the accusative **eundem**.

21. Relative.

I. The relative pronoun **qui**, *who*, is thus declined: —

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N.	**quī**	**quae**	**quŏd**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae (quă)**
G.	**cūjus (quoius)**			**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
D.	**cui (quoi)**			**quĭbŭs or quīs**		
Ac.	**quem**	**quam**	**quŏd**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Ab.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quĭbŭs**		

1. An old form of the ablative is **qui**; it is oftenest used as an interrogative adverb, *how?*

The indefinite relative, **quicumque**, *whoever*, is declined like **qui**; **quisquis**, *whoever*, rarely occurs except in the forms **quisquis, quicquid (quidquid)**, and **quoquo**.

2. The preposition **cum**, *with*, is affixed to the ablative of **qui**, as to the personal pronouns; as, **quocum, quibuscum, quīcum**, *with whom*.

II. 1. **Qui**, *who*, is also used as an interrogative; but when used substantively, the nominative singular is **quis** (rarely **qui**), **quæ, quid**; as, **quis adest?** *who is here?* **quid ais?** *what do you say?*

2. As an adjective, **qui** is frequently, and **quod** always, used: as, **qui (or quis) homo est?** *what man is it?* **quod bellum tum gĕrēbātur?** *what war was then waging?*

3. **Quantus**, *how great;* **quālis**, *of what kind*, and the like, are also used both as relative and interrogative, corresponding to **tantus**, *so great;* **tālis**, *such*, etc. (§ **22**, i.).

4. The conjunction **atque, ac**, is often used as a relative: **as, pro eo ac mĕreor**, *according to what I deserve.* — Cic.

III. The indefinite pronouns **quispiam**, *any;* **quisquam**, *any at all;* **quīvis, quīlĭbet**, *any you please;* **quisque**, *every;* **unusquisque**, *each;* and **quīdam**, *a certain one*, are declined like **quis** or **qui**; having the neuter forms **quid** (subst.), and **quod** (adj.).

Alĭquis, *some*, and **quis**, *any*, usually have **qua** for **quae**, except in the nom. fem. plural. **Quis**, *any*, is seldom used, except after **si**, *if;* **ne**, *lest;* **num** and **ec**, *whether* (interrog.)

22. Correlatives.

1. These are demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite; the demonstratives generally commence with **t** or **i**; the relatives and interrogatives (which are alike) with **qu**; the indefinites with **ălĭ**: as,

tantus, *so great;* **quantus**, *as* or *how great;* **aliquantus**, *of some size.*

ĭbi, *there;* (**hic, istic, illic**); **ŭbi**, *where;* **ălĭcŭbi**, *somewhere.*

eo, *thither;* (**huc, illuc**); **quo**, *whither;* **aliquo**, *to some place.*

indĕ, *thence;* (**hinc, illinc**); **undĕ**, *whence;* **aliunde**, *from some place.*

tum, tunc, *then;* **quum** or **cum**, *when;* **quando?** *when?* **aliquando**, *at some time*, or *at length.* (See §§ **41**, II. 2; **43**, 7.)

tŏt, *so many;* **quŏt**, *as* or *how many;* **ălĭquŏt**, *a number of.*

These last are indeclinable: as,

per tot annos, tot proelĭa, tot impĕrātōres, *so many commanders, for so many years, in so many battles.* — Cic.

2. **Alter . . . alter** (where only two are spoken of), and **ălius . . . ălius**, *one . . . another*, are used as correlatives in such phrases as —

alter ărăt, alter sĕrĭt, *one ploughs, the other sows.*

alii mē laudant, alii culpant, *some praise me, others blame.*

alius aliŭd ămăt, *one likes one thing, and one another* (§ **47**, IX.).

hī fratres inter sē ămant alter altĕrum, *these brothers love one another.*

Table 5.

Pronouns. — I.

Personal, Possessive, and Demonstrative.

First Person.

Sing. *I.*		*My.*		*Of our country.*
N. ego	meus	mea	meum	nostras
G. mei	mei	meæ	mei	nostra'tis
D. mihi	meo	meæ	meo	nostra'ti
A. me	meum	meam	meum	nostra'tem -tras
V. —	mi	mea	meum	nostras
A. me	meo	mea	meo	nostra'te (i)
Plur. *We.*				
N. nos	mei	meæ	mea	nostra'tes -tia
G. nostrum, -tri	meorum	mearum	meorum	nostra'tium
D. nobis	meis	meis	meis	nostrat'ibus
A. nos	meos	meas	mea	nostra'tes -tia
V. —	mei	meæ	mea	nostra'tes -tia
A. nobis	meis	meis	meis	nostrat'ibus

Second Person.

Sing. *Thou.*		*Your.*		[*Whose.*]
N. tu	vester	vestra	vestrum	cujus -a -um
G. tui	vestri	vestræ	vestri	—
D tib'i	vestro	vestræ	vestro	—
A. te	vestrum	vestram	vestrum	cujum -am -um
V. tu		—		—
A. te	vestro	vestra	vestro	cuja
Plur. *You.*				
N. vos	vestri	vestræ	vestra	cujæ
G. vestrum, -tri	vestrorum	vestrarum	vestrarum	—
D. vobis	vestris	vestris	vestris	—
A. vos	vestros	vestras	vestra	cujas
V. vos	—	—	—	—
A. vobis	vestris	vestris	vestris	—

Demonstratives.

Sing.	*That.*			*Self.*	
N. il'le	ille	illud	ip'se	ip'sa	ip'sum
G. illi'us	illi'us	illi'us	ipsi'us	ipsi'us	ipsi'us
D. il'li	il'li	il'li	ip'si	ip'si	ip'si
A. il'lum	il'lam	illud	ip'sum	ip'sam	ip'sum
V.	—		ip'se	ip'sa	ip'sum
A. il'lo	ille	il'lo	ip'so	ip'sa	ip'so
Plur.	*Those.*			*Selves.*	
N. il'li	il'læ	il'la	ip'si	ip'sæ	ip'sa
G. illo'rum	illa'rum	illo'rum	ipso'rum	ipsa'rum	ipso'rum
D. il'lis	il'lis	il'lis	ip'sis	ip'sis	ip'sis
A. il'los	il'las	il'la	ip'sos	ip'sas	ip'sa
V.	—		ip'si	ip'sæ	ip'sa
A. il'lis	il'lis	il'lis	ip'sis	ip'sis	ip'sis

The Same.

Sing.			Plur.		
N. i'dem	e'adem	i'dem	ii'dem	eæ'dem	e'adem
G. ejus'dem	ejus'dem	ejus'dem	eorun'dem	earun'dem	eorun'dem
D. ei'dem	ei'dem	ei'dem	eis'dem or iis'dem		
A. eun'dem	ean'dem	i'dem	eos'dem	eas'dem	e'adem
A. eo'dem	ea'dem	eo'dem	eis'dem or iis'dem		

Idem is the demonstrative **is, ea, id,** with the affix **-dem,** *same;* which is also added to the ablatives **eō,** *to that place,* and **eā,** *by that way.*

Table 6.

Pronouns. — II.

Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

Sing.	*Who?*			*Some one.*	
N.	quis	quæ	quid	al'iquis	al'iqua	al'iquid
G.		cujus			alicu'jus	
D.		cui			al'icui	
A.	quem	quam	quid	al'iquem	al'iquam	al'iquid
A.	quo	qua	quo	al'iquo	al'iqua	al'iquo
Plur.						
N.	qui	quæ	quæ	al'iqui	al'iquæ	al'iqua
G.	quorum	quarum	quorum	aliquo'rum	aliqua'rum	aliquo'rum
D.		quibus			ali'quibus	
A.	quos	quas	quæ	al'iquos	al'iquas	al'iqua
A.		quibus			ali'quibus	

Like **aliquis** are declined the indefinite pronouns **quis, quispiam,** *any.*

Sing.	*A certain one.*			*Any at all.*	
N.	quidam	quæ'dam	quoddam	quisquam	quicquam
G.		cujus'dam		cujus'quam	
D.		cui'dam		cui'quam	
A.	quendam	quandam	quoddam	quemquam	quicquam
A.	quodam	quadam	quodam	quoquam	
Plur.				*No one.*	
N.	quidam	quædam	quædam	nemo	
G.	quorun'dam	quarun'dam	quorun'dam	(nulli'us)	
D.		quibus'dam		nem'ini	
A.	quosdam	quasdam	quædam	nem'inem	
A.		quibus'dam		(nullo)	

Quisque, *every,* and **unusquisque** are thus declined: —

N.	unusquis'que	unaquæ'que	unumquid'que (-quodque, -quicquid)
G.		uniuscujus'que	
D.		unicui'que	
A.	unumquemque	unamquam'que	unumquid'que
A.	unoquo'que	unaqua'que	unoquo'que

Compounds of **quis** (**qui**), *who,* and **ŭter,** *which of the two,* are: —

quisque, uterque (**utrăque utrumque**), *each*
quivis, utervis, } *whichever you please*
quilĭbet, uterlibet, }
quicumque, utercumque, *whichever*
[**undĭque,**] **utrimque** (adv.), *on all* (or *both*) *sides*
—— **alteruter** (**-tra, -trum,** gen. **trius**), *one or the other*

Quisquam (pron.) and **ullus** (adj.), *any;* **umquam,** *ever;* **usquam,** *anywhere,* are used only in negative, interrogative, and conditional sentences; also after **quam,** *than,* or **sine,** *without.*

The use of these indefinites is seen in the following lines: —

Quis, quispiam, *any,* esse dant
Vel ponunt; non determinant:
Aliquis, *some one,* denotat
Quempiam, sed non nominat.

Quivis, quilibet, *any you please,*
Continebunt cunctas res:
Quisquam, *any at all,* et **ullus,**
Excludunt omnes, sicut **nullus.**
Donaldson.

With all relatives, the enclitic affix **-cumque,** *-soever,* may be used: as, **qualiscumque,** *of what kind soever.*

VERBS.

23. Structure.

1. Latin verbs have two Voices, viz. Active and Passive; — four Moods, viz. Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive; — four Participles, viz. the Present and Future Active, the Perfect Passive, and the Gerundive; — two Verbal Nouns, viz. the Gerund and the Supine; — six Tenses, viz. Present, Imperfect, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future, and Future Perfect; — of Persons, three in the singular and three in the plural.

2. The future and future perfect are wanting in the subjunctive mood; and the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect in the passive voice: their places being supplied by participles, combined with corresponding tenses of the verb **esse**, *to be;* but for the Fut. Perf. Subjunctive, the perfect is used.

3. The passive form has often a reflective meaning: as,

cingĭtur glădium, *he girds on his (own) sword.*
vĕlămur căpĭta, *we veil our heads.* — Virg. Æn. III. 545.

24. Moods.

I. The Indicative Mood is used for direct assertion or interrogation.

II. The Subjunctive Mood is used for dependent propositions and indirect questions. It is generally translated by the English indicative, especially when preceded by particles expressing condition or result; sometimes by the potential, *may*, *might*, or *would*, especially after particles expressing motive or purpose.

Examples of the use of the subjunctive in dependent constructions are as follows: —

nescio quid scrībam, *I know not what to write.* (§ **67,** I. 1.)
nescio quid scribas, *I know not what you are writing.*
ŭt scribam, non est sătis, *though I write, it is not enough.* (§ **61,** 2.)
sĭne scribam, *let me write.* (§ **64,** IV.)
lĭcet scribas, *you may write.*
căve scribas, *do not write.* (§ **58,** III.)
non is sum qui scribam, *I am not the one to write.* (§ **65,** I.)
vĕreor ne scribat, *I fear he will write.* (§ **64,** III.)
vereor ut scribat, *I fear he will not write.*
sunt qui pŭtent, *there are some who think.* (§ **65,** IV. 2.)
nemo est quin putet, *there is none but thinks.*
sĕdet (sedēbat) illic, tamquam scribat (scribĕret), *he sits (sat) yonder as if he were writing.* (§ **61,** I.)
si haec sciret, non venīret, *if he knew this, he would not come.*
si haec cognoscat, non vĕniat, *if he should find this out, he would not come.* (§ **59,** IV. 1.)
nisi haec cognōvisset, non vēnisset, *if he had not found this out, he would not have come.* (§ **59,** IV. 2.)
vēnit ut vĭdēret, *he came to see.* (§ **64,** I.)
ēvēnit ut videret, *it turned out that he saw.* (§ **70,** II.)
tam prŏpĕ ĕrat ut videret, *he was so near as to see.* (§ **65,** I.)
quis non gaudeat haec videns? *who would not be glad to see this?* (§ **60,** 3.)
cum domum rediisset, mortuus est, *when he had returned home, he died.* (§ **62,** I.)

An Indirect Question is an assertion in which a question is implied, without being expressed: thus —

quĭs adest? *who is here?* is a direct question; but
dīc mihi quis adsit, *tell me who is here,* is an indirect question.

III. 1. The Imperative present is used as in English; but its place is often supplied (always in the first person) by the present or perfect subjunctive: as,

nē crēde cŏlōri, *do not trust complexion.* (§ **58,** III.)
dum vīvĭmus vīvāmus, *while we live let us live.*

Not with the Imperative is **nē**; and *nor*, **nēvĕ.**

2. The future is used especially for edicts and laws: as,

regĭi imperĭi duo sunto, iique consŭles appellantor, *there shall be two of kingly authority, and they shall be called consuls.* — Cic. Leg. III. 3.

homĭnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpĕlito neve ūrīto, *a dead man in the city thou shalt not bury nor burn.* — XII. Tab. in Cic.

IV. The Infinitive is used — 1. As the Object of a Verb: as,

audīre non possum, *I cannot hear.*

2. With a Subject-Accusative, especially after Verbs of knowing, thinking, and telling: as,

dixit mē adesse, *he said that I was present.*

3. As an Indeclinable Noun (with or without a subject-accusative), when it is often rendered in English by the participial noun: as,

vīvĕre est cogĭtāre, *living is thinking.*
mĭsĕret me tē esse paupĕrem, *it grieves me that you are poor.*

25. Participles.

I. The Present Participle ends in **ns** (corresponding to our participle in *ing*), and is declined like **sapiens,** § **16,** II.

When used as an adjective, the ablative singular ends in **i**: as,

flōrenti urbe pŏtĭtur, *he takes a flourishing city;* but,
florente urbe, *while the city flourished* (§ **54,** X.).

The Future Active Participle (frequently expressing purpose) ends in **urus.** The Perfect Passive Participle ends in **us,** and the Gerundive (sometimes called the Future Passive Participle), in **dus**; they are declined like **cārus** (§ **16,** I.).

The Gerundive in the nominative has the meaning of *ought* or *must:* as, **dēlenda est Karthāgo,** *Carthage must be destroyed;* but in other cases it is translated as if it governed the noun it agrees with: as, **ad pācem pĕtendam,** *to beg peace.*

II. The use of these participles is seen in the following examples: —

tē Id dīcentem audīvi, *I heard you say that.*

săpientia Dei omnia gŭbernantis, *the wisdom of God, who governs all.*

Cūrio ad fŏcum sĕdenti, *to Curius as he sat by the fire.*

Romā prŏfĭciscens Neāpŏli diu mānēbat, *on his way from Rome he staid a good while at Naples.*

Romā profectus Athēnas vēnit, *he set out from Rome and came to Athens.*

Romam vēnit lūdos spectātūrus, or, **ad spectandos ludos,** *he came to Rome to see the games.*

bŏna pĕto semper dūrātūra, *I seek goods that will last forever.*

rĕluctante nātūrā, irrĭtus lăbor est, *if nature refuses, toil is vain.*

anno post exactos reges decimo, ab urbe condĭtā ducentesĭmo quinquagesimo quarto, *the tenth year after the kings' banishment, and the 254th from the founding of the city.*

And the Perfect Participle in English must often be rendered by other constructions in Latin: as,

cum Romam rediisset, in fŏrum vēnit, *having returned to Rome, he came into the forum.*

equĭtātu praemisso, subsĕquēbātŭr omnĭbus cōpĭis, *having sent forward the cavalry, he followed close with all his forces.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 19.

26. Gerund and Supine.

I. The Gerund is inflected as a Neuter Noun of the Second Declension. Its use is as follows: —

N. **scrībendum est mihi,** *I have to write.*
G. **lăbor scribendi,** *the task of writing.*
D. **ūtĭle scribendo,** *serviceable for writing.*
Ac. **inter scribendum,** *while writing.*
Ab. **scribendo respondit,** *he answered by writing.*

But when the Gerund would take a direct object, the Gerundive is usually employed: as,

N. **scribenda est mihi epistŏla,** *I have to write a letter.*
G. **labor scribendae epistŏlae,** *the task of writing a letter.*

Note. — The nominative of the Gerund or Gerundive is the regular way in Latin of expressing *ought* or *must*. (See § 73.)

II. The Former Supine is in form the accusative, and the Latter Supine the ablative, of a verbal noun of the fourth declension. (§ 12, 1.)

The Former is used after verbs of motion, especially in dialogue or familiar speech: as, **hūc vēnit consultum,** *he has come hither to consult;* the Latter after certain adjectives: as, **horrĭbĭle dictu,** *shocking to tell.* The latter is found only in a few verbs.

27. Tenses.

I. The Present tense expresses an action or state as now continuing; as, **vŏco,** *I am calling;* **vocor,** *I am* [*being*] *called,* i. e. *some one is now calling me.*

It is sometimes used, as in English, to give life to narrative: as, **Caesar convŏcat suos,** *Cæsar summons his men;* and may sometimes be rendered by the Perfect in English: as, **jamdiu te vŏco,** *I have been long calling you.*

II. The Imperfect is used to tell a condition of things formerly existing. Hence it is employed —

1. In Descriptions: as, **ĕrant omnīno ĭtĭnĕra duo . . . mons altissimus impendēbat,** *there were in all two ways . . . a very high mountain overhung.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 6.

2. To relate a Continued or Repeated Action: as, **saepĕ dīcēbat,** *he would often say;* **mīrābar,** *I used to wonder.*

3. To state the Circumstances attending an action or event: as, **dum haec gĕrēbantur,** *while this was going on.*

III. The Perfect is used to tell an action or event occurring at a given time in the past. Hence it is employed —

1. In Narration (perfect aorist, indefinite, or historical): as, **vēni, vīdi, vīci,** *I came, saw, conquered.*

2. After **ŭt, ŭbi, posteāquam** or **postquam,** *when,* (with a leading verb in a past tense), as equivalent to the pluperfect: as, **haec ŭbi dixit, abiit,** *when he had said this, he went away.*

3. It is also used to relate a past act or state in reference to the present time (perfect definite or relative): as,

păter te jam vocāvit, *your father has already called you.*

4. In the subjunctive, it usually follows a leading verb in the present; as,

nescio utrum ĭtă evēnĕrit necne, *I don't know whether it happened* (or *has happened*) *so or not.*

In Latin, and in all languages derived from Latin, there are two past tenses, — the Perfect, or Preterite, which is used for narration, to tell the main fact; and the Imperfect, which is used for description, or to state the attending circumstances: as,

dum Cicĕro domi mănēbat, Caesar interfectus est, *while Cicero staid at home, Cæsar was slain.*

The Gothic languages, including English, have only one Past tense.

IV. The Future and Future Perfect are used, though with greater accuracy, like the corresponding tenses in English: as,

cum audivĕro, scrībam, *when I [shall] have heard, I will write.*

V. Tenses are distributed in these two classes, —

1. PRIMARY, including Present, Perfect [Definite], and Future.
2. SECONDARY, including Imperfect, Perfect [Historical], and Pluperfect.

VI. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect, of the Active Voice, are derived from a stem (wanting in the Passive), which is usually formed by adding **v** [**u**] or **s**, with or without a connecting vowel, to the Stem of the Present; this is called the Second or Perfect Stem: as,

voc o, vocav i; — dic o, dix i.

In the Passive, these tenses are supplied by adding the corresponding tenses of **esse,** *to be,* to the Perfect Participle, made by adding the endings **us, a, um,** to the Supine stem: as,

occīsus est, *he was slain;* **monĭta erat,** *she had been warned.*

TABLE OF TENSES.

TIME.	*Action Incomplete.*	*Action Complete.*	*Action Indefinite.*	
Present.	Present.	Perfect (*def.*).	Present.	*Primary Tenses.*
Future.	Future.	Fut. Perfect.	Future.	
Past.	Imperfect.	Pluperfect.	Perfect (*hist.*), or Aorist.	*Secondary Tenses.*

28. Personal Endings.

The terminations of the persons are as follows: —

	ACTIVE.			PASSIVE.	
S. 1.	**m** [o, i]	P. 1.	**mus**	S. 1. **r**	P. 1. **mur**
2.	**s** [sti]	2.	**tis**	2. **ris, re**	2. **mĭni**
3.	**t**	3.	**nt**	3. **tur**	3. **ntur**

All Latin words in common use, ending in **t**, — except those in **ot** or **ut**; with **at**, *but*; **et**, *and*; **dumtaxat**, *however*; **lĭcet**, *although*, and indefinites in **-lĭbet**, — are in the third person of verbs; all ending in **nt** are in the third person plural.

29. Esse.

I. The Substantive Verb **esse**, *to be*, is thus inflected, having neither Gerund nor Supine, and only the Future Participle: —

Principal Parts: **sum**, *I am*; **esse**, *to be*; **fui**, *I have been*; **futurus**, *about to be*: — second stem, **fu**; third stem, **fŭt**.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	Present. *I am.*		
Sing. 1.	**sum**, *I am.*	**sim**	
2.	**ĕs**, *thou art (you are).*	**sīs**	
3.	**est**, *he (she, it) is.*	**sit**	
Plur. 1.	**sŭmŭs**, *we are.*	**sīmŭs**	
2.	**estĭs**, *you are.*	**sītĭs**	
3.	**sunt**, *they are.*	**sint**	
	Imperfect. *I was.*		
Sing. 1.	**ĕram**	**essem**	**fŏrem**
2.	**ĕrās**	**essēs**	**fores**
3.	**ĕrăt**	**essĕt**	**foret**
Plur. 1.	**ĕrāmŭs**	**essēmus**	
2.	**ĕrātĭs**	**essētis**	
3.	**ĕrant**	**essent**	**forent**

FUTURE. *I shall be.*

SING. 1.	**ĕro**	**fūtūrus sim**
2.	**ĕrīs**	**futurus sis**
3.	**ĕrīt**	**futurus sit**
PLUR. 1.	**ĕrimŭs**	**futuri simus**
2.	**ĕrĭtis**	**futuri sitis**
3.	**ĕrunt**	**futuri sint**

PERFECT. *I was*, or *have been.*

SING. 1.	**fuī**	**fuĕrim**
2.	**fuistī**	**fuĕris**
3.	**fuĭt**	**fuĕrit**
PLUR. 1.	**fuĭmus**	**fuĕrĭmus**
2.	**fuistis**	**fuĕrĭtis**
3.	**fuĕrunt** or **fuēre**	**fuĕrint**

PLUPERFECT. *I had been.*

SING. 1.	**fuĕram**	**fuissem**
2.	**fuĕrās**	**fuisses**
3.	**fuĕrat**	**fuisset**
PLUR. 1.	**fuerāmus**	**fuissēmus**
2.	**fuerātis**	**fuissētis**
3.	**fuĕrant**	**fuissent**

FUTURE PERFECT. *I shall have been.*

SING. 1.	**fuĕro**	**fuerim**
2.	**fuĕris**	**fueris**
3.	**fuĕrit**	**fuerit**
PLUR. 1.	**fuerĭmus**	**fuerimus**
2.	**fuerĭtis**	**fueritis**
3.	**fuerint**	**fuerint**

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT. **ĕs**, *be thou:* **este**, *be ye.*
FUTURE. **esto**, *thou shalt be, he shall be.*
estote, *ye shall be:* **sunto**, *they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT. **esse**, *to be.*
PERFECT. **fuisse**, *to have been.*
FUTURE. **fŏrĕ** or **fūtūrus esse**, *to be about to be.*

RARE FORMS. **escit, escunt** (*Fut. Indic.*); **siem, fuam** (*Pres. Subj.*).

II. **Ăbesse,** *to be absent,* and **ădesse,** *to be present,* are inflected in the same way with **esse.** The Present Participle of **abesse** is **absens**; **praesens** is used as the participle of **adesse.** The Imperative is wanting in both.

III. **Posse,** *to be able* (**pŏtis esse**), is thus conjugated: —

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT, *can.*	**possum**	**possim**
	pŏtĕs	**possis**
	pŏtest	**possit**
	possŭmus	**possĭmus**
	potestis	**possĭtis**
	possunt	**possint**
IMPERFECT, *could.*	**potĕram**	**possem**
FUTURE.	**potĕro**	
PERFECT.	**potui**	**potuĕrim**
PLUPERFECT.	**potuĕram**	**potuissem**
FUT. PERFECT.	**potuĕro**	
INFIN. PRES.	**posse**	PERF. **potuisse**
PARTICIPLE.	**potens,** *able.*	

IV. **Prodesse,** *to help* (**pro esse**), is conjugated like **esse,** retaining **d** when **pro** (**prod**) is followed by **e**: as, **prosum, prodes, prodest, prosŭmus, prodestis, prosunt.**

30. CONJUGATION.

I. Verbs have four regular Conjugations, distinguished by the connecting vowel of the Present Infinitive: these are —

1. **ā**: as, **vŏc ā re,** *to call.*
2. **ē**: as, **mŏn ē re,** *to warn.*
3. **ĕ**: as, **mitt ĕ re,** *to send.*
4. **ī**: as, **aud ī re,** *to hear.*

II. The Perfect and Supine Stems are regularly formed by adding to the Present Stem, in the several conjugations, —

(1.) **āv, āt**: as,	**vŏco**	**vōcāre**	**vocāvi**	**vocātum**	*call.*
(2.) **ēv, ēt**: as,	**dēleo**	**delēre**	**delēvi**	**delētum**	*wipe out.*
(3.) **s, t**: as,	**carpo**	**carpĕre**	**carpsi**	**carptum**	*pluck.*
(4.) **īv, īt**: as,	**audio**	**audīre**	**audīvi**	**audītum**	*hear.*

For full forms of Conjugation, see Tables.

In the second conjugation **ēv, ēt,** are usually modified into **ŭ, ĭt**: as,

mŏneo, monēre, monui, monĭtum, *warn.*

III. The stem of the third conjugation usually ends in a consonant; this is combined with **s** in the same way as in nouns (§ 11, III. 1, 2, 3): as,

rĕgo, regĕre, rexi, rectum, *rule.*
mitto, mittĕre, mīsi, missum, *send.*

Vowel stems of the third conjugation end in **ĭ** or **ŭ**. Of the former, five simply lengthen the stem in the perfect: as,

căpio, căpĕre, cēpi, captum, *take;* **fŏdio, fōdi, fossum,** *dig.*

But **cŭpio, cŭpīvi,** *desire;* **-cŭtio (quătio), -cussi,** *strike;* **-lĭcio, -lexi,** *draw;* **părio, pĕpĕri,** *produce;* **răpio, răpui,** *seize;* **săpio, săpīvi,** *taste;* **-spĭcio, -spexi,** *view.*

In these verbs, **ĭ** is dropped when it would be followed by **ĕ** or **ĭ**: as in **căpis, căpit, căpĕrem**; but retained in the future **căpiet.**

A stem ending in **ŭ** (**v**) is unchanged in the perfect: as,

ăcuo, ăcui, ăcūtum, *sharpen;* **volvo, volvi, vŏlūtum,** *turn.*

But **fluo, flūxi,** *flow;* **struo, struxi,** *pile.*

IV. The perfect stem is often formed by simply lengthening the stem-vowel: as,

(1.) **jŭvo**	**juvāre**	**jūvi**	**jūtum**	*help.*
(2.) **cieo**	**cĭēre**	**cīvi**	**cītum**	*rouse.*
(3.) **fŭgio**	**fugĕre**	**fūgi**	**fugĭtum**	*flee.*
(4.) **vĕnio**	**venīre**	**vēni**	**ventum**	*come.*

Or by reduplicating the stem (omitted in most compounds): as,

(1.) **do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum,** *give* (compounds usually in the third conjugation: as, **addo, addĕre, addĭdi, addĭtum,** *add.*)
(2.) **mordeo, mordēre, mŏmordi, morsum,** *bite.*
(3.) **curro, currĕre, cŭcurri, cursum,** *run.*

Or by analogy of other conjugations: as,

(1.)	**sĕco**	**secāre**	**secui**	**sectum**	*cut.*
(2.)	**măneo**	**manēre**	**mansi**	**mansum**	*wait.*
(3.)	**pĕto**	**petĕre**	**petīvi**	**petītum**	*seek.*
(4.)	**vincio**	**vincīre**	**vinxi**	**vinctum**	*bind.*

31. Active Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

I. INDIC.	SUBJ.	II. INDIC.	SUBJ.
I call.	PRESENT.	*I warn.*	
vŏc o	voc em	mŏn eo	mon eam
ās	es	es	eas
ăt	et	et	eat
āmus	ēmus	ēmus	eamus
ātis	ētis	ētis	eatis
ant	ent	ent	eant
I called (*was calling*).	IMPERFECT.	*I warned* (*was warning*).	
voc ābam	voc ārem	mon ēbam	mon ērem
abās	ares	ebas	eres
abăt	aret	ebat	eret
abāmus	arēmus	ebāmus	erēmus
abātis	arētis	ebātis	erētis
abant	arent	ebant	erent
I will call.	FUTURE.	*I will warn.*	
voc ābo	vocat ūrus sim	mon ēbo	monit urus sim
abis	sis	ebis	sis
abit	sit	ebit	sit
abĭmus	-uri simus	ebĭmus	-uri simus
abĭtis	sitis	ebĭtis	sitis
abunt	sint	ebunt	sint
I called (*have called.*)	PERFECT.	*I warned* (*have warned.*)	
vocāv i	vocāv ĕrim	monu i	monu ĕrim
I had called.	PLUPERFECT.	*I had warned.*	
vocāv ĕram	vocav issem	monu ĕram	monu issem
I shall have called.	FUTURE PERFECT.	*I shall have warned.*	
vocāv ĕro	(vocav erim)	monu ĕro	(monu erim)

	SING.	PL.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PL.
PRES.	voc ā	voc āte		mon ē	mon ēte
FUT.	voc āto	voc atōte, anto		mon ēto	mon etōte, ento

PRES.	PERF.	INFINITIVE.	PRES.	PERF.
voc āre	vocāv isse		mon ēre	monu isse

PRES.	FUT.	PARTICIPLES.	PRES.	FUT.
voc ans	vocāt ūrus		mon ens	monĭt ūrus

GERUND.	SUPINE.	GERUND.	SUPINE.
voc andum	vocāt um, u	mon endum	monĭt um, u

Third and Fourth Conjugations.

III. INDIC.	SUBJ.	IV. INDIC.	SUBJ.
	I rule. Present.	*I hear.*	
rĕg o	reg am	aud io	aud iam
is	as	is	ias
it	at	it	iat
ĭmus	amus	ĭmus	iamus
ĭtis	atis	ĭtis	iatis
unt	ant	iunt	iant
	I ruled (*was ruling*). Imperfect.	*I heard* (*was hearing*).	
reg ēbam	reg ĕrem	aud iēbam	aud īrem
ebas	eres	iebas	ires
ebat	eret	iebat	iret
ebāmus	erēmus	iebāmus	irēmus
ebātis	erētis	iebātis	irētis
ebant	erent	iebant	irent
	I will rule. Future.	*I will hear.*	
reg am	recturus sim	aud iam	auditurus sim
es	sis	ies	sis
et	sit	iet	sit
ēmus	recturi simus	iemus	audituri simus
etis	sitis	ietis	sitis
ent	sint	ient	sint
	I ruled (*have ruled*). Perfect.	*I heard* (*have heard*).	
rex i	rex ĕrim	audīv i	audīv ĕrim
	I had ruled. Pluperfect.	*I had heard.*	
rex ĕram	rex issem	audīv ĕram	audīv issem
	I shall have ruled. Future Perfect.	*I shall have heard,*	
rex ĕro	(rex ĕrim)	audīv ĕro	(audīv ĕrim)
Sing.	Pl.	Sing.	Pl.
	IMPERATIVE.		
P. reg ĕ	reg īte	aud ī	aud īte
F. reg īto	reg ītote, unto	aud īto	aud ītote, iunto
Pres.	Perf.	Pres.	Perf.
	INFINITIVE.		
reg ĕre	rex isse	aud īre	audīv isse
Pres.	Fut.	Pres.	Fut.
	PARTICIPLES.		
reg ens	rect urus	aud iens	audīt urus
Gerund.	Supine.	Gerund.	Supine.
reg endum	rect um, u	aud iendum	audīt um, u

32. Passive Voice.—First and Second Conjugations.

I. INDIC.	SUBJ.	II. INDIC.	SUBJ.
I am (being) called.		PRESENT.	*I am (being) warned.*
voc or	voc er	mon eor	mon ear
āris, re	ēris, re	ēris, re	eāris, re
atur	etur	etur	eatur
amur	emur	emur	eamur
amini	emini	emini	eamini
antur	entur	entur	eantur
I was (being) called.		IMPERFECT.	*I was (being) warned.*
voc ābar	voc ārer	mon ēbar	mon ērer
abāris, re	arēris, re	ebāris, re	erēris, re
abatur	arētur	ebatur	eretur
abamur	aremur	ebamur	eremur
abamini	aremini	ebamini	eremini
abantur	arentur	ebantur	erentur
I shall be called.		FUTURE.	*I shall be warned.*
voc abor		mon ēbor	
abĕris, re		ebĕris, re	
abĭtur		ebĭtur	
abĭmur		ebĭmur	
abimini		ebimini	
abuntur		ebuntur	
I was called.		PERFECT.	*I was warned.*
vocatus sum	vocatus sim	monĭtus sum	monĭtus sim
I had been called.		PLUPERFECT.	*I had been warned.*
vocatus eram,	essem	monĭtus eram,	essem
		FUTURE PERFECT. (*Shall have been.*)	
vocatus ero		monĭtus ero	

	SING.	PL.	IMPERATIVE.	SING.	PL.
P.	voc āre	voc amini		mon ēre	mon emini
F.	voc ātor	voc antor		mon ētor	mon entor

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	voc āri	mon ēri
PERF.	vocātus esse	monĭtus esse
FUT.	vocatum iri	monitum iri

PERF.	GER.	PARTICIPLES.	PERF.	GER.
voc ātus	voc andus		mon ĭtus	mon endus

Third and Fourth Conjugations.

III. INDIC.	SUBJ.		IV. INDIC.	SUBJ.
I am (being) ruled.		Present.	*I am (being) heard.*	
reg or	reg ar		aud ior	aud iar
ĕris, re	āris, re		īris, re	iāris, re
ĭtur	ātur		ītur	iātur
ĭmur	āmur		īmur	iāmur
imini	amĭni		imĭni	iamĭni
untur	antur		iuntur	iantur
I was (being) ruled.		Imperfect.	*I was (being) heard.*	
reg ēbar	reg ĕrer		aud iēbar	aud īrer
ebāris, re	erēris, re		iebāris, re	irēris, re
ebatur	eretur		iebatur	iretur
ebamur	eremur		iebamur	iremur
ebamini	eremini		iebamini	iremini
ebantur	erentur		iebantur	irentur
I shall be ruled.		Future.	*I shall be heard.*	
reg ar			aud iar	
ēris, re			iēris, re	
etur			ietur	
emur			iemur	
emini			iemini	
entur			ientur	
I was ruled.		Perfect.	*I was heard.*	
rectus sum	rectus sim		auditus sum	auditus sim
I had been ruled.		Pluperfect.	*I had been heard.*	
rectus eram,	essem		auditus eram,	essem
		Future Perfect. (*Shall have been.*)		
rectus ero			auditus ero	

Sing.	Pl.	IMPERATIVE.	Sing.	Pl.
reg ĕre	reg ĭmini		aud īre	aud īmini
reg ĭtor	reg untor		aud ītor	aud iuntor

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	reg i	aud īri
Perf.	rectus esse	auditus esse
Fut.	rectum iri	auditum iri

Perf.	Ger.	PARTICIPLES.	Perf.	Ger.
rectus	regendus		audītus	audiendus

Table 7.

First Conjugation.

I. Active Voice.

Indic.	Subj.
Present, *I love.*	
a'mo, *I love*	a'mem
a'mas, *thou lovest*	a'mes
a'mat, *he loves*	a'met
ama'mus, *we love*	ame'mus
ama'tis, *you love*	ame'tis
a'mant, *they love*	a'ment
Imperfect, *I loved (used to love).*	
ama'bam	ama'rem
ama'bas	ama'res
ama'bat	ama'ret
amaba'mus	amare'mus
amaba'tis	amare'tis
ama'bant	ama'rent
Future, *I shall or will love.*	
ama'bo	amatu'rus
ama'bis	sim, &c.
ama'bit	
amab'imus	
amab'itis	
ama'bunt	
Perfect, *I loved (have loved).*	
ama'vi	amav'erim
amavis'ti	amav'eris
ama'vit	amav'erit
amav'imus	amaver'imus
amavis'tis	amaver'itis
amave'runt, -e're	amav'erint
Pluperfect, *I had loved.*	
amav'eram	amavis'sem
amav'eras	amavis'ses
amav'erat	amavis'set
amavera'mus	amavisse'mus
amavera'tis	amavisse'tis
amav'erant	amavis'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have loved.*	
amav'ero	amav'erim
amav'eris	&c.
amav'erit	
amaver'imus	
amaver'itis	
amav'erint	

II. Passive Voice.

Indic.	Subj.
Present, *I am loved.*	
a'mor	a'mer
ama'ris (re)	ame'ris (re)
ama'tur	ame'tur
ama'mur	ame'mur
amam'ini	amem'ini
aman'tur	amen'tur
Imperfect, *I was loved.*	
ama'bar	ama'rer
amaba'ris (re)	amare'ris (re)
amaba'tur	amare'tur
amaba'mur	amare'mur
amabam'ini	amarem'ini
amaban'tur	amaren'tur
Future, *I shall be loved.*	
ama'bor	futu'rum sit ut
amab'eris (re)	a'mer, &c.
amab'itur	
amab'imur	
amabim'ini	
amabun'tur	
Perfect, *I was (have been) loved.*	
ama'tus sum	ama'tus sim
ama'tus es	ama'tus sis
ama'tus est	ama'tus sit
ama'ti sumus	ama'ti simus
ama'ti estis	ama'ti sitis
ama'ti sunt	ama'ti sint
Pluperfect, *I had been loved.*	
ama'tus eram	ama'tus es'sem
ama'tus eras	ama'tus es'ses
ama'tus erat	ama'tus es'set
ama'ti era'mus	ama'ti esse'mus
ama'ti era'tis	ama'ti esse'tis
ama'ti e'rant	ama'ti es'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have been loved.*	
ama'tus ero	ama'tus sim
ama'tus eris	&c.
ama'tus erit	
ama'ti er'imus	
ama'ti er'itis	
ama'ti e'runt	

Imperative.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr.	a'ma, *love thou*	ama'te, *love ye*	ama're	amam'ini
F.	ama'to	amato'te	—	—
	ama'to	aman'to	ama'tor	aman'tor

Infinitive.

Pr.	ama're	Pf.	amavis'se	Pr.	ama'ri
F.	amatu'rus esse			F.	ama'tum iri (ama'tus fo're)

Pf. ama'tus esse

Participles.

a'mans	amatu'rus	ama'tus	aman'dus, a, um

Ger. aman'dum, *loving* Sup. ama'tum, ama'tu, *to love*

Table 8.

Second Conjugation.

I. Active Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I warn*	
mo'neo, *I warn*	mo'neam
mo'nes, *you warn*	mo'neas
mo'net, *he warns*	mo'neat
mone'mus [*&c.*	monea'mus
mone'tis	monea'tis
mo'nent	mo'neant
Imperfect, *I was warning.*	
mone'bam	mone'rem
mone'bas	mone'res
mone'bat	mone'ret
moneba'mus	monere'mus
moneba'tis	monere'tis
mone'bant	mone'rent
Future, *I shall warn.*	
mone'bo	monitu'rus sim
mone'bis	monitu'rus sis
mone'bit	monitu'rus sit
moneb'imus	monitu'ri simus
moneb'itis	monitu'ri sitis
mone'bunt	monitu'ri sint
Perfect, *I warned (have warned).*	
mon'ui	monu'erim
monuis'ti	monu'eris
mon'uit	monu'erit
monu'imus	monuer'imus
monuis'tis	monuer'itis
monue'runt (re)	monu'erint
Pluperfect, *I had warned.*	
monu'eram	monuis'sem
monu'eras	monuis'ses
monu'erat	monuis'set
monuera'mus	monuisse'mus
monuera'tis	monuisse'tis
monu'erant	monuis'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have warned.*	
monu'ero	monu'erim
monu'eris	&c.
monu'erit	
monuer'imus	
monuer'itis	
monu'erint	

II. Passive Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I am warned.*	
mo'neor	mo'near
mone'ris (re)	monea'ris (re)
mone'tur	monea'tur
mone'mur	monea'mur
monem'ini	moneam'ini
monen'tur	monean'tur
Imperfect, *I was warned.*	
mone'bar	mone'rer
moneba'ris (re)	monere'ris (re)
moneba'tur	monere'tur
moneba'mur	monere'mur
monebam'ini	monerem'ini
moneban'tur	moneren'tur
Future, *I shall be warned.*	
mone'bor	futu'rum sit ut
moneb'eris (re)	monear,
moneb'itur	-a'ris, &c.
monebim'ini	
monebun'tur	
Perfect, *I was (have been) warned.*	
mon'itus sum	mon'itus sim
mon'itus es	mon'itus sis
mon'itus est	mon'itus sit
mon'iti sumus	mon'iti simus
mon'iti estis	mon'iti sitis
mon'iti sunt	mon'iti sint
Pluperfect, *I had been warned.*	
mon'itus eram	mon'itus essem
mon'itus eras	mon'itus esses
mon'itus erat	mon'itus esset
mon'iti era'mus	mon'iti esse'mus
mon'iti era'tis	mon'iti esse'tis
mon'iti erant	mon'iti essent
Future Perfect, *I shall have been warned.*	
mon'itus ero	mon'itus sim
mon'itus eris	&c.
mon'itus erit	
mon'iti er'imus	
mon'iti er'itis	
mon'iti erunt	

Imperative.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr.	mo'ne	mone'te	mone're	monem'ini
F.	mone'to	moneto'te	——	——
	mone'to	monen'to	mone'tor	monen'tor

Infinitive.

Pr. mone're	Pf. monuis'se	Pr. mone'ri	Pf. mo'nitus esse
F. monitu'rus esse		F. mon'itum iri (mon'itus fo're)	

Participles.

mo'nens	monitu'rus	mon'itus	monen'dus

Ger. monen'dum, di, &c. Sup. mon'itum, mon'itu

Table 9.

Third Conjugation (*Consonant Stem*).

I. Active Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I rule.*	
re'go, *I rule.*	re'gam
re'gis, *thou rulest.*	re'gas
re'git, *he rules.*	re'gat
reg'imus, *we rule.*	rega'mus
reg'itis, *you rule.*	rega'tis
re'gunt, *they rule.*	re'gant
Imperfect, *I was ruling.*	
rege'bam	reg'erem
rege'bas	reg'eres
rege'bat	reg'eret
regeba'mus	regere'mus
regeba'tis	regere'tis
rege'bant	reg'erent
Future, *I shall rule.*	
re'gam	rectu'rus sim
re'ges	rectu'rus sis
re'get	rectu'rus sit
rege'mus	rectu'ri simus
rege'tis	rectu'ri sitis
re'gent	rectu'ri sint
Perfect, *I ruled* (*have ruled*).	
rex'i	rex'erim
rexis'ti	rex'eris
rex'it	rex'erit
rex'imus	rexer'imus
rexis'tis	rexer'itis
rexe'runt (re)	rex'erint
Pluperfect, *I had ruled.*	
rex'eram	rexis'sem
rex'eras	rexis'ses
rex'erat	rexis'set
rexera'mus	rexisse'mus
rexera'tis	rexisse'tis
rex'erant	rexis'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have ruled.*	
rex'ero	rex'erim
rex'eris	&c.
rex'erit	
rexer'imus	
rexer'itis	
rex'erint	

II. Passive Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I am ruled.*	
re'gor	re'gar
reg'eris (re)	rega'ris (re)
reg'itur	rega'tur
reg'imur	rega'mur
regim'ini	regam'ini
regun'tur	regan'tur
Imperfect, *I was ruled.*	
rege'bar	re'gerer
regeba'ris (re)	regere'ris (re)
regeba'tur	regere'tur
regeba'mur	regere'mur
regebam'ini	regerem'ini
regeban'tur	regeren'tur
Future, *I shall be ruled.*	
re'gar	futu'rum sit ut re'gar rega'ris, &c.
rege'ris (re)	
rege'tur	
rege'mur	
regem'ini	
regen'tur	
Perfect, *I was* (*have been*) *ruled.*	
rec'tus sum	rec'tus sim
rec'tus es	rec'tus sis
rec'tus est	rec'tus sit
rec'ti sumus	rec'ti simus
rec'ti estis	rec'ti sitis
rec'ti sunt	rec'ti sint
Pluperfect, *I had been ruled.*	
rec'tus eram	rec'tus essem
rec'tus eras	rec'tus esses
rec'tus erat	rec'tus esset
rec'ti era'mus	rec'ti esse'mus
rec'ti era'tis	rec'ti esse'tis
rec'ti erant	rec'ti essent
Future Perfect, *I shall have been ruled.*	
rec'tus ero	rec'tus sim
rec'tus eris	&c.
rec'tus erit	
rec'ti er'imus	
rec'ti er'itis	
rec'ti erunt	

Imperative.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr. 2.	re'ge	reg'ite	reg'ere	regim'ini
F. 2.	reg'ito	regito'te	—	—
3.	reg'ito	regun'to	re'gitor	regun'tor

Infinitive.

Pr.	reg'ere	Pf.	rexis'se
F.	rectu'rus esse		
Pr	re'gi	Pf.	rec'tus esse
F.	rec'tum iri (rec'tus fo're)		

Participles.

re'gens	rectu'rus	rec'tus	regen'dus

Ger. regen'dum, di, &c. Sup. rec'tum, rec'tu

Table 10.

Third Conjugation (*Vowel Stem*).

I. Active Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I take.*	
ca'pio, *I take.*	ca'piam
ca'pis, *thou takest.*	ca'pias
ca'pit, *he takes.*	ca'piat
cap'imus, *we take.*	capia'mus
cap'itis, *you take.*	capia'tis
ca'piunt, *they take.*	ca'piant
Imperfect, *I was taking.*	
capie'bam	cap'erem
capie'bas	cap'eres
capie'bat	cap'eret
capieba'mus	capere'mus
capieba'tis	capere'tis
capie'bant	cap'erent
Future, *I shall take.*	
ca'piam	captu'rus sim
ca'pies	captu'rus sis
ca'piet	captu'rus sit
capie'mus	captu'ri simus
capie'tis	captu'ri sitis
ca'pient	captu'ri sint
Perfect, *I took (have taken).*	
ce'pi	cep'erim
cepis'ti	cep'eris
ce'pit	cep'erit
cep'imus	ceper'imus
cepis'tis	ceper'itis
cepe'runt (re)	cep'erint
Pluperfect, *I had taken.*	
cep'eram	cepis'sem
cep'eras	cepis'ses
cep'erat	cepis'set
cepera'mus	cepisse'mus
cepera'tis	cepisse'tis
cep'erant	cepis'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have taken.*	
cep'ero	cep'erim
cep'eris	&c.
cep'erit	
ceper'imus	
ceper'itis	
cep'erint	

II. Passive Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I am taken.*	
ca'pior	ca'piar
cap'eris (re)	capia'ris (re)
cap'itur	capia'tur
cap'imur	capia'mur
capim'ini	capiam'ini
capiun'tur	capian'tur
Imperfect, *I was taken.*	
capie'bar	cap'erer
capieba'ris (re)	capere'ris (re).
capieba'tur	capere'tur
capieba'mur	capere'mur
capiebam'ini	caperem'ini
capieban'tur	caperen'tur
Future, *I shall be taken.*	
ca'piar	futu'rum sit ut
capie'ris (re)	ca'piar
capie'tur	-a'ris, &c.
capie'mur	
capiem'ini	
capien'tur	
Perfect, *I was (have been) taken.*	
cap'tus sum	cap'tus sim
cap'tus es	cap'tus sis
cap'tus est	cap'tus sit
cap'ti sumus	cap'ti simus
cap'ti estis	cap'ti sitis
cap'ti sunt	cap'ti sint
Pluperfect, *I had been taken.*	
cap'tus eram	cap'tus essem
cap'tus eras	cap'tus esses
cap'tus erat	cap'tus esset
cap'ti era'mus	cap'ti esse'mus
cap'ti era'tis	cap'ti esse'tis
cap'ti erant	cap'ti essent
Future Perfect, *I shall have been taken.*	
cap'tus ero	cap'tus sim
cap'tus eris	&c.
cap'tus erit	
cap'ti er'imus	
cap'ti er'itis	
cap'ti erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr. 2.	ca'pe	cap'ite	cap'ere	capim'ini
F. 2.	cap'ito	capito'te	—	—
3.	cap'ito	capiun'to	cap'itor	capiun'tor

INFINITIVE.

Pr. cap'ere	Pf. cepis'se	Pr. ca'pi	Pf. cap'tus esse
F. captu'rus esse		F. cap'tum iri (cap'tus fo're)	

PARTICIPLES.

ca'piens	captu'rus	cap'tus	capien'dus

Ger. capien'dum, di, &c. Sup. cap'tum, cap'tu

Table II.

Fourth Conjugation

I. Active Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I hear.*	
au'dio, *I hear.*	au'diam
au'dis, *thou hearest.*	au'dias
au'dit, *he hears.*	au'diat
audi'mus, *we hear.*	audia'mus
audi'tis, *you hear.*	audia'tis
au'diunt, *they hear.*	au'diant
Imperfect, *I was hearing.*	
audie'bam	audi'rem
audie'bas	audi'res
audie'bat	audi'ret
audieba'mus	audire'mus
audieba'tis	audire'tis
audie'bant	audi'rent
Future, *I shall hear.*	
au'diam	auditu'rus sim
au'dies	auditu'rus sis
au'diet	auditu'rus sit
audie'mus	auditu'ri simus
audie'tis	auditu'ri sitis
au'dient	auditu'ri sint
Perfect, *I heard* (*have heard*).	
audi'vi	audiv'erim
audivis'ti	audiv'eris
audi'vit	audiv'erit
audiv'imus	audiver'imus
audivis'tis	audiver'itis
audive'runt (re)	audiv'erint
Pluperfect, *I had heard.*	
audiv'eram	audivis'sem
audiv'eras	audivis'ses
audiv'erat	audivis'set
audivera'mus	audivisse'mus
audivera'tis	audivisse'tis
audiv'erant	audivis'sent
Future Perfect, *I shall have heard.*	
audiv'ero	audiv'erim
audiv'eris	&c.
audiv'erit	
audiver'imus	
audiver'itis	
audiv'erint	

II. Passive Voice.

INDIC.	SUBJ.
Present, *I am heard.*	
au'dior	au'diar
audi'ris (re)	audia'ris (re)
audi'tur	audia'tur
audi'mur	audia'mur
audim'ini	audiam'ini
audiun'tur	audian'tur
Imperfect, *I was heard.*	
audie'bar	audi'rer
audieba'ris (re)	audire'ris (re)
audieba'tur	audire'tur
audieba'mur	audire'mur
audiebam'ini	audi'rem'ini
audieban'tur	audiren'tur
Future, *I shall be heard.*	
au'diar	futu'rum sit ut audi'ar, -a'ris, &c.
audie'ris (re)	
audie'tur	
audie'mur	
audiem'ini	
audien'tur	
Perfect, *I was* (*have been*) *heard.*	
audi'tus sum	audi'tus sim
audi'tus es	audi'tus sis
audi'tus est	audi'tus sit
audi'ti sumus	audi'ti simus
audi'ti estis	audi'ti sitis
audi'ti sunt	audi'ti sint
Pluperfect, *I had been heard.*	
audi'tus eram	audi'tus essem
audi'tus eras	audi'tus esses
audi'tus erat	audi'tus esset
audi'ti era'mus	audi'ti esse'mus
audi'ti era'tis	audi'ti esse'tis
audi'ti erant	audi'ti essent
Future Perfect, *I shall have been heard.*	
audi'tus ero	audi'tus sim
audi'tus eris	&c.
audi'tus erit	
audi'ti er'imus	
audi'ti er'itis	
audi'ti erunt	

IMPERATIVE.

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Pr. 2.	au'di	audi'te	audi're	audim'ini
F. 2.	audi'to	audito'te	——	——
3.	audi'to	audiun'to	audi'tor	audiun'tor

INFINITIVE.

Pr. audi're	Pf. audivis'se	Pr. audi'ri	Pf. audi'tus esse
F. audi'tu'rus esse		F. audi'tum iri (audi'tus fo're)	

PARTICIPLES.

au'diens	auditu'rus	audi'tus	audien'dus

Ger. audien'dum, di, &c. Sup. audi'tum, audi'tu

Table 12.

Terminations of Verbs.

Active Voice. *Indicative.*

	Present I.	Present II.	Present III.	Present IV.	Imperf.	Fut. I. II.	Fut. III. IV.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. P.
S. 1.	o	eo	o	io	bam	bo	am	i	eram	ero (sso
2.	as	es	is	is	bas	bis	es	isti	eras	eris (xo)
3.	at	et	it	it	bat	bit	et	it	erat	erint
P. 1.	amus	emus	imus	imus	bamus	bimus	emus	imus	eramus	erimus
2.	atis	etis	itis	itis	batis	bitis	etis	istis	eratis	eritis
3.	ant	ent	unt	iunt	bant	bunt	ent	erunt	erant	erint

Subjunctive.

	Present (im) I.	II.	III.	IV.	Imperf.	Perf.	Plup.
S. 1.	em	eam	am	iam	rem	erim (ssim)	issem
2.	es	eas	as	ias	res	eris	isses
3.	et	eat	at	iat	ret	erit	esset
P. 1.	emus	eamus	amus	iamus	remus	erimus	issemus
2.	etis	eatis	atis	iatis	retis	eritis	issetis
3.	ent	eant	ant	iant	rent	erint	issent

		I.	II.	III.	IV.
Impera.	P.	a	e	o	i
	F.	ato	ete	ito	ite
		anto	ento	unto	iunto
Infinit.		are	ere	ere	ire
		avisse	uisse	(s)isse	ivisse
Part.		ans	ens	ens	iens
		aturus	iturus	(t)urus	iturus
Gerund		andum	endum	endum	iendum

Passive Voice. *Indicative.*

	Present I.	Present II.	Present III.	Present IV.	Imp.	Fut. I. II.	Fut. III. IV.
Sing. 1.	or	eor	or	ior	bar	bor	ar
2.	aris	eris	eris	iris	baris, re	beris, re	eris, re
3.	atur	etur	itur	itur	batur	bitur	etur
Plur. 1.	amur	emur	imur	imur	bamur	bimur	emur
2.	amini	emini	imini	imini	bamini	bimini	emini
3.	antur	entur	untur	iuntur	bantur	buntur	entur

Subjunctive.

	Present I.	Present II.	Present III.	Present IV.	Imperf.
Sing. 1.	er	ear	ar	iar	rer
2.	eris, re	earis, re	aris, re	iaris, re	reris, re
3.	etur	eatur	atur	iatur	retur
Plur. 1.	emur	eamur	amur	iamur	remur
2.	emini	eamini	amini	iamini	remini
3.	entur	eantur	antur	iantur	rentur

		I.	II.	III.	IV.
Impera.	P.	are	ero	ere	ire
		amini	emini	imini	imini
	F.	ator	etor	itor	itor
		antor	entor	untor	iuntor
Infinit.		ari	eri	i (t)us esse	iri
		atus esse	itus esse		itus esse
Part.		atus	itus	(t)us	itus
		andus	endus	endus	iendus

33. Rules of Conjugation.

I. The Conjugations differ from one another only in the tenses formed upon the First or Present Stem.

All irregularities are either in the tenses derived from the first stem, or in the formation of the other stems; never in the terminations added to them.

The tenses formed upon the first stem in the active voice are also formed upon it in the passive.

Tenses of the second stem are inflected like the corresponding tenses of **esse**: as,

Perf. Sing. **vocavi, vocavisti, vocavit;**
Plur. **vocavĭmus, vocavistis, vocavērunt or vocavēre.**

II. In these inflections it will be observed, that —

1. The Imperfect Subjunctive is formed from the Present Infinitive by adding **m**; and the Pluperfect Subjunctive from the Perfect Infinitive in the same manner.

2. The passive tenses of the first stem are formed from the corresponding ones in the active, by changing **m** into **r**; or, where the active ends in **o**, by adding **r**.

3. The Imperative Passive is the same in form with the Present Infinitive Active.

III. 1. In tenses formed from the Second Stem, **v** between two vowels is often suppressed (syncopated), and the vowels in some cases made one; as **amasse** for **amavisse, flestis** for **flevistis, audieram** for **audiveram.** This takes place regularly in the compounds of **eo**, *go* (fourth conj.); as, **abii** for **abivi**, *I went away.*

So **s**, when it would be repeated: as, **dixti** for **dixisti.**

2. Four verbs, **dico, duco, facio,** and **fero,** with several of their compounds, drop the vowel-termination of the Imperative, making **dīc, dūc, făc, fĕr**: as, **dic mihi**, *tell me;* **aufer**, *take away.* For the imperative of **scio**, *know*, **scito** is always used in the singular, and **scitōte** usually in the plural.

3. The following ancient forms are seldom found except in poetry: —

a. In the fourth conjugation, **-ībam, -ībo,** for **-iēbam, -iam** (fut.);
b. In the present subjunctive, **-im**: as in **duim, perduim;**
c. In the perfect subjunctive and future perfect, **-so, -sim**: as, **faxo, faxim,** from **facio; habesso,** from **hăbeo.**
d. In the passive infinitive, **-ier**; as **āmārier** for **amāri.**

34. Forms of Conjugation.

I. The principal parts of a verb, which determine its conjugation throughout, are the Present Indicative and Infinitive (first stem); the Perfect Indicative (second stem); and Supine (third stem): as,

vŏc o, vŏc āre, vŏcāv i, vŏcāt um, *call.*

Note. — Few verbs have a Supine actually in use.

The Synopsis of a verb consists of the first person singular of each tense, arranged in regular order: as, of **cōgo (con ăgo), cogĕre, coēgi, coactum**: —

	Pres.	Imperf.	Fut.	Perf.	Plup.	Fut. Perf.
Ind.	**cōgo**	**cogēbam**	**cogam**	**coēgi**	**coegĕram**	**coegĕro**
Subj.	**cogam**	**cogĕrem**		**coēgĕrim**	**coegissem**	

Imp. **coge, cogīto.** Inf. **cogĕre, coegisse, coacturus esse.**
Parts. **cogens, coacturus, coactus, cogendus**

The synopsis may be given of any person: as, of the impersonal verb **dĕcet** (3d person singular): —

Ind. **decet decēbat decēbit decuit decuĕrat decuĕrit**
Subj. **deceat, -cēret, decuĕrit, -isset;** Inf. **decēre, decuisse.**

II. In those tenses which are formed by uniting the verb **esse,** *to be,* with the participles of the verb (see §§ **27,** vi. and **40**), it is very common to omit **est** and **esse**: as,

Allŏbrŏgĭbus sese vel persuāsūros [esse] exīstimābant, vel vi coactūros [esse]; *they reckoned that they should either persuade the Allobroges or compel them.* — Cæs. B. G. I. 6.

So when **est** or **esse** is used simply as a copula (§ **45** 3); as,

maxĭmi rīsus, *there was the greatest merriment.* — Cic. Brut. 75.

Frequently the perfect participle is used as an adjective, with **esse,** and having the same form as a passive tense; as,

lŏcus qui nunc saeptus est, *the place which is now enclosed.* — Liv. I. 8. (**saeptus est** might also mean, *was enclosed*).

quo est dētestābĭlior istorum immānitas, qui lăcĕrārunt omni scĕlĕre patriam, et in eā fundĭtus dēlendā occŭpāti sunt et fuērunt, *hence the more hateful is the cruelty of those* [*authors of the civil war*] *who have rent their country with every crime, and are now and have been engaged in utterly ruining her.* — Cic. Off. I. 17.

Table 13.

Irregular Conjugation. — I.

The following list contains the Stem-endings of all the simple Verbs which form their Perfect and Supine Stems otherwise than by § **30**, ii. iii. Those marked † have also regular forms.

Forms preceded by a hyphen are found only in compounds.

Compounds generally change ă or ĕ of the stem into ĭ.

I.

†crepo, ui, it- *resound.*
cubo, ui, it-, *lie down.*
do, dedi, dăt-, *give.*
domo, ui, it-, *subdue.*
frico, cui, tct-, *rub.*
juvo, juvi, jut-, *help.*
mico, micui, *glitter.*
†neco, necui, ct-, *kill.*
plico, cui, -cit-, *fold.*
†poto, — pot-, *drink.*
seco, cui, ct-, *cut.*
sono, ui, it-, *sound.*
sto, steti, stat-, *stand.*
tono, ui, it-, *thunder.*
veto, ui, it-, *forbid.*

II.

algeo, alsi, *be cold.*
ardeo, arsi, ars-, *burn.*
augeo, xi, ct-, *increase.*
caveo, cavi, caut-, *care.*
censeo, nsui, ns-, *value.*
cieo, civi, cit-, *excite.*
deleo, evi, et-, *destroy.*
doceo, cui, doct-, *teach.*
faveo, vi, faut-, *favor.*
ferveo, vi, bui, *boil.*
fleo, flevi, flet-, *weep.*
foveo, fovi, fot-, *cherish.*
frigeo, frixi, *be cold.*
fulgeo, fulsi, *shine.*
hæreo, si, hæs-, *stick.*
indulgeo, si, s-, *indulge.*
jubeo, jussi, juss-, *bid.*
langueo, gui, *faint.*
liqueo, liqui (cui), *melt.*
luceo, luxi, *shine.*
lugeo, xi, ct-, *mourn.*
maneo, si, mans-, *wait.*
misceo, scui, st-, (xt-) *mix, mingle.*
mordeo, momordi, mors-, *bite.*
moveo, vi, mot-, *move.*
mulceo, lsi, ls-, *soothe.*
mulgeo, lsi (xi), ls- (lct-), *milk.*
neo, nevi, net-, *spin.*
niveo, †nixi, *wink*
paveo, pavi, *fear.*
pendeo, pependi, *hang.*
-pleo, plevi, plet-, *fill.*
prandeo, ndi, ns-, *dine.*
rideo, risi, ris-, *laugh.*
sedeo, sedi, sess-, *sit.*
sorbeo, bui (psi), *suck.*
spondeo, spopondi, spons-, *pledge.*
strideo, stridi, *whiz.*
suadeo, suasi, suas-, *persuade.*
teneo, tenui, tent-, *hold.*
tergeo, rsi, ters-, *wipe.*
tondeo, totondi, tons-, *shear.*
torqueo, rsi, rt-, *twist.*
torreo, ui, tost-, *roast.*
turgeo, tursi, *swell.*
urgeo, ursi, *urge.*
video, vidi, vis-, *see.*
voveo, vovi, vot-, *vow.*

III.

abdo, didi, dit-, *hide.*
ago, egi, act-, *drive.*
alo, ui, alt- (it-), *nourish.*
arcesso, ivi, ĭt-, *summon.*
bibo, bibi, bibit-, *drink.*
cado, cecidi, cas-, *fall.*
cædo, cecīdi, cæs-, *cut.*
cano, cecini, cant-, *sing.*
capesso, sivi, *undertake.*
capio, cepi, capt-, *take.*
cedo, cessi, cess-, *move.*
-cello, -ui, -cels-, *impel.*
-cendo, di, cens-, *kindle*
cerno-, crevi, cret-, *decree.*
cingo, cinxi, nct-, *gird.*
claudo, si, claus-, *shut.*
colo, colui, cult-, *till.*
compesco, cui, *restrain.*
consulo, lui, lt-, *consult.*
coquo, coxi, coct-, *cook.*
credo, didi, dit-, *trust.*
cresco, evi, et-, *grow.*
cudo, -di, -cus-, *forge.*
-cumbo, -cubui, -cubit-, *lie down.*
cupio, ivi, it-, *desire.*
curro, cucurri, curs-, *run.*
-cutio, -ssi, -ss-, *shake.*
demo, mpsi, mpt-, *take away.*
depso, sui, st-, *knead.*
disco, didici, discitu-rus, *learn.*
divido, visi, vis-, *divide.*
-do, -didi, -dit-, *give.*
edo, edi, es-, *eat.*
emo, emi, empt-, *buy.*
facesso, si, sit-, *execute.*
facio, feci, fact-, *make.*
fallo, fefelli, fals-, *fail.*
-fendo, -di, -ns-, *ward.*
fero, tŭli, lat-, *bear.*
figo, fixi, fix-, *fix.*
findo, fidi, fiss-, *split.*
fingo, nxi, ct-, *fashion.*
flecto, xi, flex-, *bend.*
fluo, fluxi, flux-, *flow.*
fodio, fodi, foss-, *dig.*
frango, fregi, fract-, *break.*
fremo, ui, it-, *roar.*
frendo, -fres-, ss-, *gnash.*
fugio, fugi, fugit-, *flee.*
fundo, fudi, fus-, *pour.*
furo, furui, *rage.*
gemo, ui, it-, *groan.*
gero, gessi, gest-, *bear.*
gigno, genui, it-, *beget.*
ico, ici, ict-, *strike.*
incesso, ivi, *attack.*
jacio, jeci, jact-, *throw.*
lacesso, sivi, ĭt-, *provoke.*
lædo, læsi, læs-, *hurt.*
lambo, bi, bit-, *lick.*
†lavo, lavi, lot-, laut-, *wash* (reg. 1st conj).
lego, gi, -xi, ct-, *gather.*
-licio, lexi, lect-, *allure.*
lino, vi (levi), lit-, *smear.*
linquo, -liqui, lict-, *leave.*
ludo, lusi, lus-, *play.*
luo, lui, luit-, *atone.*
mando, di, mans-, *chew.*
mergo, si, mers-, *dip.*
meto, messui, mess-, *reap.*
mingo, minxi, mict-, *make water.*
mitto, misi, miss-, *send.*
molo, lui, lit-, *grind.*
necto, nexi (ui), nex-, *weave.*
nosco, novi, not-, *learn.*
-nuo, nui, nuit-, *nod.*
occulo, lui, lt-, *hide.*
pando, di, pans-, pass-, *open.*
pango, nxi, nct-; pegi pepigi, pact-, *fasten.*
parco, peperci, parsi; parcit-pars-, *spare.*
pario, peperi, parit-, part-, *bring forth.*
pasco, pavi, past-, *feed.*
pecto, pexi, pex- (pectit-), *comb.*
pello, pepuli, puls-, *drive.*
pendo, pependi, pens-, *weigh.*
peto, petivi, petit-, *seek.*

Table 14.

Irregular Conjugation. — II.

pingo, nxi, pict-, *paint.*
pinso, nsi, ns-, nst-, st-, *bray, bruise.* [*plaud.*
plaudo, si, plaus-, *applecto, xi, xui, x-, twine.*
pluo, plui, pluvi, *rain.*
pono, posui, posit-, *put.*
posco, poposci, *demand.*
prehendo, di, ns-, *seize.*
premo, pressi, ss-, *press.*
promo, mpsi, mpt-, *bring out.* [*prick.*
pungo, pupugi, punct-, *quaero, sivi, sit-, seek.*
quatio, -cussi, quass-, *shake.*
quiesco, evi, et-, *rest.*
rado, rasi, ras-, *scrape.*
rapio, pui, pt-, *snatch.*
rodo, rosi, ros-, *gnaw.*
rudo, rudivi, it-, *bray.*
rumpo, rupi, pt-, *burst.*
ruo, rui, rut-, it-, *fall.*
sapio, ivi, ui, *be wise.*
scabo, scabi, *scratch.*
scando, di, ns-, *climb.*
scindo, idi, sciss-, *tear*
scisco, ivi, it-, *ordain.*
scribo, psi, pt-, *write.*
sero, sevi, sĕt-, *sow.*
sero, -serui, sert-, *entwine.*
sido, sidi (-sedi), sess-, *settle.*
sino, sivi, sit-, *permit.*
sisto, stĭti, stăt-, *stop.*
solvo, lvi, lūtum, *pay.*
spargo, rsi, rs-, *spread.*
sperno, sprevi, spret-, *despise.*
-spicio, spexi, spect-, *look.* [*strew.*
sterno, stravi, strat-,
sterto, tui, *snore.*
strepo, ui, it-, *sound.*
-stinguo, nxi, nct-, *extinguish.*
stringo, nxi, ct-, *bind.*
struo, struxi, ct-, *build.*
suesco, evi, et-, *bewont.*
tango, tetigi, tact-, *touch.*
temno, -mpsi, -mpt-, *despise.*
tendo, tetendi, -tendi, tens-, *stretch.*
tergo, tersi, ters-, *wipe.*
tero, trivi, trīt-, *rub.*
texo, texui, text-, *weave.* [*raise.*
tollo, sustuli, sublat-,
traho, xi, tract-, *draw.*
tremo, mui, *tremble.*
trudo, si, trus-, *thrust.*
tundo, tutŭdi, tuns-, (tus-), *beat.*
uro, ussi, ust-, *burn.*
vado, -vasi, -vas-, *go.*
veho, xi, ct-, *carry.*
vello, velli (vulsi), vuls-, *pluck.*
vendo, didi, dit-, *sell.*
verro, ri, vers-, *sweep.*
verto, ti, vers-, *turn.*
vinco, vici, vict-, *conquer.*
viso, visi, vis-, *visit.*
vivo, vixi, vict-, *live.*
volvo, lvi, volūt-, *roll.*
vomo, vomui, vomit-, IV. [*vomit.*
amicio, xi (cui), *clothe.*
aperio, rui, rt-, *open.*
farcio, rs, rt-, rct-, *stuff.*
fulcio, lsi, lt-, *prop.*
haurio, si, st-, *draw.*
operio, ui, rt-, *cover.*
raucio, si, s-, *be hoarse.*
reperio, ri, rt-, *find.*
salio, ui, ii, salt-, *leap.*
sancio, nxi, ct-, *ratify.*
sarcio, sars, sart-, *patch.*
sentio, nsi, ns-, *feel.*
sepio, psi, pt-, *hedge in.*
venio, veni, nt-, *come.*
vincio, nxi, nct-, *bind.*

Deponent Verbs.

	I. *Attempt.*		II. *Fear.*		III. *Fall.*		IV. *Move a mass.*	
IND.		SUBJ.						
Pres.	conor	-er	vereor	-ear	labor	-ar	molior	-iar
Imp.	conabar	-arer	verebar	-erer	labebar	-erer	moliebar	-irer
Fut.	conabor		verebor		labar		moliar	
Perf.	conatus	sum	veritus	sum	lapsus	sum	molitus	sum
Pluf.	conatus	eram	veritus	eram	lapsus	eram	molitus	eram
Fut. P.	conatus	ero	veritus	ero	lapsus	ero	molitus	ero
IMP.	conare, -ator		verere, -etor		labere, -itor		molire, -itor	
INF.	conari		vereri		labi		moliri	
PART.	conans		verens		labens		moliens	
	conatus		veritus		lapsus		molitus	
	conaturus		veriturus		lapsurus		moliturus	
	conandus		verendus				moliendus	
Ger.	conandum		verendum		labendum		moliendum	
Sup.	conatum, -tu		veritum, -tu		lapsum, -su,		molitum, -tu	

The following list contains all the Irregular Deponents:

II.

fateor, fass, *acknowledge.*
reor, rāt-, *reckon.*
tueor, tuit, tut-, *defend.*

III.

adipiscor, ept-, *obtain.*
amplect, plex-, *embrace.*
expergiscor, rect-, *rouse*
fruor, fruct-, uit-, *enjoy.*
fungor, funct-, *perform.*
gradior, gress-, *step.*
irascor, irat-, *grow angry.*
labor, laps-, *fall.*
loquor, locut-, *speak.*
-miniscor, ment-, *think.*
morior, mortuus, moriturus, *die.*
nanciscor, nanct-, nact-, *obtain.*
nascor. nat-, *be born.*
nitor, nix-, nis-, *lean on.*
obliviscor, oblit-, *forget.*
orior, ortus-, oriturus, oriri, oreris, *arise.*
paciscor, pact-, *bargain.*
pascor. pass-, *suffer.*
proficiscor, fect-, *set out.*
queror, quest-, *complain.*
sequor, secut-, *follow.*
ulciscor, ult-, *avenge.*
utor, us-, *use.*

IV.

experior, expert-, *try.*
metior, mens-, *measure.*
opperior, oppert-, *wait.*
ordior, ors-, *begin.*

35. Deponent Verbs.

I. Deponent Verbs have the form of the Passive Voice, with an Active or Reflective signification (§ 90, II.): as,

1. **mīror**	**mirāri**	**mirātus**	*admire.*
2. **mĕreor**	**merēri**	**merĭtus**	*deserve.*
3. **sĕquor**	**sequi**	**secūtus**	*follow.*
4. **pŏtior**	**potīri**	**potītus**	*obtain.*

1. These verbs have the Participles, Gerunds, and Supines of both voices; as, **mirans**, *admiring*; **miraturus**, *about to admire*; **miratus**, *having admired*; **mirandus**, *to be admired* (*admirable*).

2. The participle in **dus** (gerundive) has necessarily a passive meaning, and hence is found only in transitive verbs, or of neuter verbs used impersonally (§ 39, 5): as,

potienda est tellus, *the land must be won.*
pugnandum est nobis, *we must fight.*
oblītus meorum, obliviscendus et illis, *forgetting my friends, and sure to be forgotten by them.*—Hor. Ep. I. 11, 9.

3. Most deponents are neuter or reflective in their meaning, corresponding to what in Greek verbs is called the Middle Voice.

4. More than half of all deponents are of the First Conjugation; and all of these are regular.

5. About twenty verbs of active signification are found in both active and passive forms: as, **mĕreo** or **mĕreor**, *deserve.*

6. Some deponents are occasionally used in a passive signification: as, **crīmĭnor**, *accuse*; **dignor**, *deem worthy*; **testor**, *testify.*

7. The perfect participle of verbs otherwise deponent is often passive: as, **mercātus**, *bought*; **ădeptus**, *obtained.*

II. The verbs **audeo**, *dare*; **fīdo**, *trust*; **gaudeo**, *rejoice*; **sŏleo**, *be wont*, have no second or Perfect stem, but form the Perfect, etc., after the analogy of the passive: as, **ausus est**, *he dared*; **fisus sum**, *I trusted*; **găvīsus est**, *he was glad*; **sŏlĭti sumus**, *we were accustomed.* These are called Semi-Deponents (sometimes Neuter Passives).

1. From **audeo** we have an old subjunctive **ausim**. The form **sōdes**, *an thou wilt* (for **si audes**), is frequent in the dramatists.

2. The active forms **văpŭlo**, *be flogged*, and **vēneo**, *be sold* (**vēnum eo**, *go for sale*), have a passive meaning. They are sometimes called Neutral Passives.

36. Derivative Verbs.

I. Inchoative or Inceptive Verbs are formed by adding the termination **sco** to the stem and connecting vowel of their primitives: as, from **căleo**, *I am warm*, **calesco**, *I grow warm*. They are of the Third Conjugation, and are found only in the tenses of the First or Present Stem.

II. Intensives are formed by adding the terminations of the first conjugation to the third stem of certain verbs: as, **dicto**, *dictate*, from **dīco** (**dictum**), *say*.

III. Frequentatives are formed by adding **ĭto** to the first stem of verbs of the first conjugation, **ĭto** or **o** to the third stem of those of the third, and inflecting as in the first: as, **clāmĭto**, *I keep shouting*; **dictĭtat**, *he keeps saying*.

IV. Desideratives, expressing a wish, end in **ŭrio**, and are of the fourth conjugation: as, **ēsŭrio** (from **ĕdo**, *eat*), *I am hungry*.

37. Irregular Verbs.

[For **esse** and its derivatives see § 29.]

I. **Vŏlo, velle, volui,** *wish* (no third stem).

Ind. Pr. **vŏlo vīs vult vŏlŭmus vultis vŏlunt.**
Subj. Pr. **vĕlim.** Imperf. **vellem.**

Other tenses are regular. There is no Imperative. The form **sīs** for **si vis**, *if you please*, is often found after imperatives: as, **căve sis mentiaris**, *take care you don't lie*. Cic. Mil. 22.

II. **Nōlo (non volo), nolle, nolui,** *to be unwilling*.

Ind. Pr. **nōlo nonvis nonvult nōlŭmus nonvultis nōlunt.**
Subj. Pr. **nōlim.** Imperf. **nollem.**
Imperative. **nōlī nolīto nolīte nolitōte nolunto.**

The rest regular. No third stem.

III. **Mālo (măgis volo), malle, malui,** *prefer*.

Ind. Pr. **mālo māvīs māvult mālŭmus māvultis mālunt.**
Subj. Pr. **mālim.** Imperf. **mallem.**

The rest regular; no Imperative or third stem.

Table 15.

Irregular Verbs. — I.

VOLO, *will.*		NOLO, *will not.*		MALO, *prefer.*	
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
		Present.			
volo	velim	nolo	nolim	malo	malim
vis	velis	nonvis	nolis	mavis	malis
vult	velit	nonvult	nolit	mavult	malit
vol'umus	veli'mus	nol'umus	noli'mus	mal'umus	mali'mus
vultis	velitis	nonvultis	nolitis	mavultis	malitis
volunt	velint	nolunt	nolint	malunt	malint
		Imperfect.			
volebam	vellem	nolebam	nollem	malebam	mallem
volebas	velles	nolebas	nolles	malebas	malles
volebat	vellet	nolebat	nollet	malebat	mallet
volebamus	vellemus	nolebamus	nollemus	malebamus	mallemus
volebatis	velletis	nolebatis	nolletis	malebatis	malletis
volebant	vellent	nolebant	nollent	malebant	mallent
		Future.			
volam		nolam		malam	
voles		noles		males	
volet		nolet		malet	
volemus		nolemus		malemus	
voletis		noletis		maletis	
volent		nolent		malent	
		Perfect.			
volui	-erim	nolui	-erim	malui	-erim
voluisti	-eris	noluisti	-eris	maluisti	-eris
voluit	-erit	noluit	-erit	maluit	-erit
voluimus	-erimus	noluimus	-erimus	maluimus	-erimus
voluistis	-eritis	noluistis	-eritis	maluistis	-eritis
voluerunt	-erint	noluerunt	-erint	maluerunt	-erint
		Pluperfect.			
volueram	-issem	nolueram	-issem	malueram	-issem
volueras	-isses	nolueras	-isses	malueras	-isses
voluerat	-isset	noluerat	-isset	maluerat	-isset
volueramus	-issemus	nolueramus	-issemus	malueramus	-issemus
volueratis	-issetis	nolueratis	-issetis	malueratis	-issetis
voluerant	-issent	noluerant	-issent	maluerant	-issent
		Future Perfect.			
voluero	(-erim)	noluero	(-erim)	maluero	(-erim)
volueris		nolueris		malueris	
voluerit		noluerit		maluerit	
voluerimus		noluerimus		maluerimus	
volueritis		nolueritis		malueritis	
voluerint		noluerint		maluerint	

Imperative.

Pr. noli, noli'te, *do not.*
Fut. noli'to, nolito'te, *thou shalt not, ye shall not.*
noli'to, nolunto, *he shall not, they shall not.*

Infinitive.

Pres.	velle,	nolle	malle
Perf.	voluisse,	noluisse	maluisse

Participle.

Present,	volens, *willing.*	nolens, *unwilling.*
Gerund,	volendi, volendo	nolendi

Table 16.

Irregular Verbs. — II.

FERO, *bear.*

	ACTIVE. INDIC.	SUBJ.	*PASSIVE.* INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	fero	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	feras	ferris	feraris (re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	feratur
	fer'imus	fera'mus	fer'imur	fera'mur
	fertis	feratis	ferimini	feramini
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
Imp.	ferebam	ferrem	ferebam	ferrer
Fut.	feram	laturus sim	ferar	
Perf.	tuli	tulerim	latus sum	latus sim
Plup.	tuleram	tulissem	latus eram	latus essem
F. Perf.	tulero	(tulerim)	latus ero	

	Sing.	*Plur.*	IMPERATIVE.	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Pres.	fer	ferte		ferre	ferimini
Fut.	ferto	fertote			
	ferto	ferunto		fertor	feruntor

Pres.	Perf.	INFINITIVE.	Pres.	Perf.
ferre	tulisse		ferri	latus esse

Pres.	Fut.	PARTICIPLES.	Perf.	Ger.
ferens	laturus		latus	ferendus

EO, *go.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	eo, is, it imus, itis, eunt.	eam, eas, eat, &c.
Imp.	ibam, ibas, &c.	ie'bam, &c.
Fut.	ibo, ibis, &c.	iturus sim
Perf.	ivi (ii)	i'verim (ierim)
Plup.	i'veram	ivis'sem (iissem)
F. Per.	i'vero	(iverim)

	Sing.	*Plur.*	IMPERATIVE.	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Pres.	i	ite		i	ite
Fut.	ito	itote, eunto		ito	itote, iunto

Pres.	Perf.	INFINITIVE.	Pres.	Perf.
ire	ivisse		ieri	factus esse

Pres.	Fut.	PARTICIPLES.	Perf.	Ger.
iens, euntis	iturus		factus	faciendus

FIO, *become.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	fio, fis, fit fimus, fitis, fiunt.	fiam, fias, &c.
Imp.	fie'bam, &c.	fi'erem, &c.
Fut.	fiam, es, et, &c.	
Perf.	factus sum	factus sim
Plup.	factus eram	factus essem
F. Per.	factus ero	(factus sim)

	Sing.	*Plur.*	IMPERATIVE.	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
Pres.	fi	fite			
Fut.	fito	fitote, fiunto			

Pres.	Perf.	INFINITIVE.	Pres.	Perf.
fieri	factus esse			

Pres.	Fut.	PARTICIPLES.	Perf.	Ger.
	factus			faciendus

QUEO, *can.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	queo, quis, quit quimus, -itis, -eunt	queam
Imp.	quibam, quibat quibant	quirem, -ret, -rent
Fut.	quibo, quibunt	
Perf.	quivi, -vit, -erunt	qui'verit
Plup.		quissent
Infin.	quire, quivisse	
Pres.	quiens, queuntis	

NEQUEO, *cannot.*

	INDIC.	SUBJ.
Pres.	ne'queo, nonquis, -imus, -itis, -eunt	ne'queam, &c.
Imp.	nequi'bam, -ibat -ibant	nequi'rem
Fut.	nequibunt	
Perf.	nequi'vi, -isti, -it	nequi'verim
Plup.		nequisset
Infin.	nequire, -ivisse	
Pres.	nequiens	

IV. **Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum,** *bear.*

ACTIVE: IND. PRES. **fĕro fers fert ferĭmus fertis fĕrunt.**
SUBJ. IMP. **ferrem.** IMPERAT. **fer ferto ferte fertōte ferunto.**

PASSIVE: IND. PRES. **feror ferris fertur ferĭmur,** &c.
SUBJ. IMP. **ferrer.** IMPERAT. **ferre fertor ferimini feruntor.**
INFINITIVE. **ferri, latus esse.**
PARTICIPLES. **ferens laturus latus ferendus.**
The rest regular.

V. **Ĕdo,** *eat,* is a regular verb of the third conjugation, with the following forms like those of **esse**: —

IND. PRES. **ēs est estis.** SUBJ. (PRES. **edim**). IMPERF. **essem.**
IMPERAT. **ēs esto estŏ estote.** INFIN. **esse.**

VI. **Eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum,** *go.*

IND. PRES. **eo īs it īmus ītis eunt.**
IMPERF. **ībam.** FUT. **ībo ībis ībit ībĭmus ībĭtis ībunt.**
SUBJ. PR. **eam.** IMPERF. **īrem.**
IMPERAT. **ī īto īte ītōte eunto.**
PART. PRES. **iens, euntis.** FUT. **ĭtūrus.** GER. **eundum.**

VII. **Făcio, facĕre, fēci, factum,** *make,* is inflected regularly in the Active; having also the peculiar forms **faxo** (fut. perf.) and **faxim** (subj. perf.). It has no Passive tenses formed upon the present stem, but uses instead **fio,** *bė made,* or *become,* which is inflected as a regular verb of the Fourth Conjugation, but has the infinitive **fiĕri** and the subjunctive imperfect **fiĕrem**: thus, — **fio fiĕri factus sum.**

Compounds of **facio** with prepositions, change **ă** into **ĭ** in the first stem, and into **e** in the third, and form their passive regularly: as,

conficĭo conficere confēci confectum, *finish.*

Other compounds retain the **a**, and have **fio** in the Passive: as,

ACT. **bĕnĕ-facio, (-fā'cis), -fēci, -factum.** PASS. **bĕnĕfĭo,** *benefit.*

VIII. **Queo,** *I can,* and **nequeo,** *I cannot,* are conjugated like **eo.** They are rarely used except in the present: as,

queo quis quit, quīre, quīvi.

38. Defective Verbs.

I. **Coepi**, *began;* **ōdi**, *hate;* and **mĕmĭni**, *remember*, have no first stem. **Incĭpio**, *begin*, is used as a present for **coepi**; **odi** and **memini** have a perfect stem only, with a present signification, and are hence called Preteritive Verbs. They are inflected regularly in the tenses derived from the second stem. Other parts of these verbs are —

1. **Coeptus** (used with the Passive Infinitive: as, **urbs coepta est obsĭdēri**, *the city began to be beset*); **coepturus**, *about to begin*.

2. **Osus osurus**, both Active in their signification.

3. Imperative. **mĕmento mĕmentōte**, *remember*.

II. **Aio**, *say*, has the forms —

ais ait aiunt, aiebam, &c.; **aias aiat aiant, aiens**.

III. **Inquam**, *quoth I* (used in quotations: as, **inquit**, *quoth he*), has the following forms: —

Pr. Ind. **inquam inquis inquit inquĭmus inquĭtis inquiunt.**
Imperf. **inquiebas.** Perf. **inquisti inquit.**
Fut. **inquies inquiet.** Imperat. **inque inquito.**

IV. **Fāri**, *speak*, forms the periphrastic tenses regularly: as, **fātus sum**, &c. It has also —

Ind. Pr. **fātur.** Fut. **fābor, fabitur.**
Imperat. **fāre.** Infin. **fāri.** Supine. **fātu.**

Certain other forms occur in Compounds.

V. The following are found chiefly in the Imperative: —

1. **salvē, salvēte**, *hail.* (**salveo.**)
2. **ăvē, ăvētĕ, ăvēto**, *hail*, or *farewell.* (**aveo.**)
3. **cĕdo, cette**, *give, tell.* 4. **ăpăge**, *begone!*

39. Impersonal Verbs.

These are found only in the third person singular, without any personal subject, this being often supplied by an infinitive or other grammatical construction. The most usual verbs of this class are such as the following: —

1. **Lĭbet** (**lŭbet**), *it pleases*; **lĭcet**, *it is permitted*, with infin. and dat.; **dĕcet**, *fit*, **ŏportet**, *must*, with acc. (§ **70**, III.): as,

libet mihi lĕgĕre, licet tibi lūdĕre, *I like to read, you may play.*
ŏportuit me īre, *I had to go.*

2. **Mĭsĕrĕt**, *it grieves*, **pŭdet**, *it shames*, **taedet**, *it wearies*, **pĭget**, *it disgusts*, with acc. of person and gen. of object: as,

miseret me cāsus tui, *I am sorry for your mishap.* (§ **50**, IV. 3.)

3. **Accĭdit**, *it happens*; **restat**, *it remains*; having a phrase or clause as subject: as,

persaepe ēvĕnit ut ūtĭlĭtas cum hŏnestāte certet, *it often happens that gain is at variance with honor.* (§ **70**, II.)

4. **Pluit**, *it rains*; **ningit**, *it snows*; **grandĭnat**, *it hails.*

5. The passive of Neuter Verbs, or those governing the Dative: as, **pugnātur**, *there is fighting*; **parcĭtur mihi**, *I am spared.*

40. Periphrastic Forms.

I. The participle in **rus** may be used with any mood or tense of **sum**, forming the Periphrastic Future Active: as,

cum venturus sit, *since he is about to come.*

II. The participle in **dus** (Gerundive) may be used in the same way to denote duty or propriety: as,

vēra dīcenda sunt, *the truth must be told.*

So with the nominative of the Gerund: as,

agĭtandumst vigilias, *I must keep watch.* — Plaut. Trin. 869.

Note. — The auxiliary verb (or copula) **esse** is often omitted in these periphrastic forms (see § **34**).

41. Adverbs.

I. Adverbs are regularly formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **ē** to the stem; from those of the third by adding **ter** or **ĭter**: as,

cārus, *dear*, **carē**; **săpiens**, *wise*, **sapienter**; **brĕvis**, *short*, **breviter**; **audax**, *bold*, **audāciter**, or **audacter.**

The Comparative of an adverb thus formed is the neuter of the corresponding adjective; the superlative changes **us** of the adjective into **ē**: as,

cārē, carius, carissimē, *dearly.*
nūper, nuperrime, *lately, just now.*
săpienter, sapientius, sapientissime, *wisely.*
brĕviter, brevius, brevissime, *shortly.*
făcĭliter (or **facilĕ**), **facilius, facillime,** *easily.*
bĕnĕ (for **bŏnē**), **mĕlius, optimē,** *well, better, best.*
mălĕ, pējus, pessimē, *ill, worse, worst.*

So compare the adverbs —

diu, diutius, diutissime, *long* (in time).
saepe, saepius, saepissime, *often.*
sătis, *enough;* **satius,** *preferable.*
sĕcus, sēcius, *otherwise.*

II. The following adverbs require special explanation : —

1. **Etiam,** *also,* is stronger than **quŏque,** and precedes the emphatic word, while **quŏque** follows it: as,

terret etiam nos, ac mĭnātur, *us also he terrifies and threatens.* — Cic. Ros. Am. 40.

hoc quŏque maleficium, *this crime likewise.* — Id.

2. **Nunc,** *now,* points definitely to the present time; **jam,** *already,* has a reference to the past, and with negatives means *no longer.* A similar relation exists between **tunc** and **tum**: as,

nunc jam aperte rempublĭcam pĕtis, *now at last you openly attack the commonwealth.* — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

non est jam lēnĭtati lŏcus, *there is no longer room for lenity.* — Id. II. 4.

nunc quĭdem delēta est, tunc flōrēbat, *now to be sure it* [*Greece*] *is destroyed, then it prospered.* — Id. Ros. Am. 4.

tum, cum ex urbe Cătĭlīnam eiciēbam, *at the time when I was engaged in expelling Catiline from the city.* — Id. Cat. III. 2.

3. **Certō** means *certainly;* **certĕ** usually *at any rate:* as,

certo scio, *I know for a certainty.* — Cic. de Senect. 1.

ŏnĕre aut jam urgentis aut certe adventantis sĕnectūtis et te et me ipsum lĕvāri vŏlo, *I wish both you and myself to be relieved of the weight of old age, which is either already pressing upon us, or at any rate approaching.* — Id.

4. **Primum**, *first*, is usually followed by **deinde**, *next*, &c.; **primo**, *at first*, by **posteā** or **mox**, *afterwards*: as,

primum mihi vĭdētur de gĕnere belli, deinde de magnitūdine, tum de impĕrātore delĭgendo esse dīcendum, *I think I must speak first of the nature of the war, next of its magnitude, then of the choice of a commander.* — Cic. de Leg. Man. 2.

dissuadente primo Vercingetorĭge, post concēdente, *Vercingetorix at first opposing, afterwards yielding.* — Cæs. B.G. VII. 15.

5. With **ne ... quĭdem**, *not even*, the emphatic word stands between **ne** and **quĭdem**: as,

ne ōmĭnis quĭdem causā, *not even for the sake of the omen.* — Cic. Ros. Am. 48.

6. Two negatives make an affirmative, as in English.

42. Prepositions.

I. The following Prepositions are followed by the accusative: —

ad, *to.*	**ergā**, *towards.*	**post**, *after.*
adversŭs, or	**extrā**, *outside.*	**praeter**, *beyond.*
adversum, *towards.*	**infrā**, *below.*	**prŏpĕ**, *near.*
antĕ, *before.*	**intĕr**, *among.*	**propter**, *on account of.*
ăpŭd, *at, near.*	**intrā**, *inside.*	**sĕcundum**, *next to.*
circā, or	**juxtā**, *near.*	**suprā**, *above.*
circum, *around.*	**ŏb**, *on account of.*	**trans**, *across.*
circĭtĕr, *about.*	**pĕnĕs**, *in the power.*	**ultrā**, *on the further side.*
cĭs, cĭtrā, *this side.*	**pĕr**, *through.*	
contrā, *against.*	**pōnĕ**, *behind.*	

II. The following take the ablative: —

ā, ăb, abs, *from, by.*	**ē, ex**, *out of.*
absquĕ, *but for, without.*	**prae**, *in comparison with.*
cōram, *in presence of.*	**prō**, *in front of, for.*
cum, *with.*	**sĭnĕ**, *without.*
dē, *down from.*	**tĕnŭs**, *up to*, or *as far as.*

III. The following take the accusative or ablative: —

ĭn, *into, in*; **sŭb**, *under*; **subtĕr**, *beneath*; **sŭpĕr**, *above.* (§ 56, I.)

In and **sub**, when followed by the accusative, signify *motion to*, when by the ablative, *rest in*, a place: as,

in Ităliam vēnit, atque ĭn Etrūriā tres annos mănēbat, *he came to Italy, and staid in Tuscany three years.*

sub montem īvit, ĭbĭque sub arbŏre consēdit, *he went to the foot of a hill, and sat down there under a tree.*

IV. The following require special explanation: —

In, with the accusative, means *into*; **ad**, *to* (*the neighborhood*), is used especially for persons; **ex** (**e**), *out of*, is the reverse of **in**; **ab** (**a**), *away from*, is the reverse of **ad**; **de**, *from*, has reference to a part of the object: as,

lēgāti in castră vĕniunt, *the ambassadors come into the camp.* — Cic. Ros. Am. 9.

ut prŏfĭciscantur ad L. Sullam, *that they may go to Lucius Sulla.* — Id.

e patrĭmōniō nudum expŭlisti, *you cast him naked out of his inheritance.* — Id. 50.

ab sē injūriam prōpulsārĕ, *to ward off injury from himself.* — Id.

nihil de patris fortūnis ad suam rem convertit, *he has turned nothing to his own use from his father's fortunes.* — Id. 49.

43. Conjunctions.

Conjunctions are more numerous, and their use is much more accurately distinguished, in Latin than in English. The following list includes those most important: —

1. **Et**, *and*, connects independent words or clauses; **-que** (enclitic), combines closely into one connected idea; **atque** (sometimes **ac** before consonants), adds with emphasis: as,

frĕmit mīles, et trĭbūnos centŭrĭōnesque prōdĭtiōnis arguit, *the soldiers rave, and accuse the tribunes and centurions of treachery.* — Tac. Hist. I. 80.

mănēre ac dēprehendi, an fŭgĕre et dispergi pĕrīcŭlōsius fŏret, *whether it were more dangerous to remain and be seized, or to fly and scatter.* — Id. 81.

When the second member is negative, **neque** (**nec**) is used: as,

rĕdiērunt in castra invīti nĕque innŏcentes, *they return into the camp unwilling and not innocent.* — Id. 82.

2. **Sed** and **vērum** (more forcible), *but*, are used to contradict what precedes, — always after negatives; **at**, *yet*, to introduce with emphasis a new consideration, especially in argument; **autem** in the same way, especially in transitions, but with less force: as,

non ad pŏpŭli Rōmāni laudem, sed ad jūdĭcum crudēlĭtatem servatus, *preserved, not for the praise of the Roman people, but the cruelty of the judges.* — Cic. Verr. V. 1.

sit fur, sit sacrĭlĕgus; at est bŏnus impĕrātor, *grant he is a thief, a sacrilegious wretch, — for all that he is a good commander.* — Id.

contāgio autem ista servĭlis belli cur abs te praedĭcātur? *but why is that infection of servile war brought forward by you?* — Id. 3.

non solum ... verum etiam (a favorite expression of Cicero's), *not only . . . but also.* — Cic. Cat. I. 10.

3. **Aut**, *or*, excludes the alternative; **vel** (**-vĕ**) gives a choice; **sivĕ** (**seu**) is properly used in disjunctive conditions, but is also used with words, especially two names for the same object: as,

ŭbi pŏtest illă aetas aut călescĕre vel aprīcātiōne mĕlius vel igni, aut vĭcissim umbris ăquisvĕ rĕfrigerari sălūbrius? *where can that period of life either enjoy warmth better, whether by sunshine or by fire; or cool itself more healthfully, with shade or water?* — Cic. de Senect. 16.

sīve ămor sīve ămīcĭtia, *whether love or friendship.* — Cic. de Amic. 27.

4. **Nam** (**namquĕ**), *for*, introduces a sufficient cause; **ĕnim** (**ētĕnim**), an explanatory circumstance: as,

id certe călămitātĕ docti mĕmŏriā retĭnēre dĕbēmus. Nam tum, cum in Asia res magnas permulti āmīsĕrant, scīmus Romae sŏlūtiōne impĕdīta fĭdem concĭdisse. Non ĕnim possunt ūnā in cīvĭtāte multi rem ac fortūnas āmittere ut non plūres sēcum in eamdem trahant călămitātem. *This surely, taught by disaster, we ought to keep in memory. For when very many had lost great possessions in Asia, we know that at Rome credit fell by the stoppage of payments. For it is not possible that many lose their property and fortunes in one state without drawing more with them into the same calamity.* — Cic. de Leg. Manil. 7.

5. **Ergo**, *therefore*, is used for things demonstrated; **ĭtăque**, in proofs from the nature of things; **ĭgĭtur**, *then* (a weak **ergo**), in passing from one stage of the argument to another; **ĭdcirco**, *for this reason*, to call attention to a special argument: as,

ergo ĭdcirco turpis haec culpă est, quod duăs res sanctissĭmas vĭŏlat, *therefore, for this reason, this is a base misdeed, because it violates two most holy things.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 39.

nec se cŏmĭtem illius fŭrōris sed dŭcem praebuit. Ităque hac āmentiā quaestiōne nŏvā perterrĭtus in Asiam profūgit. Nulla est ĭgĭtur excūsātio peccāti, si ămīci causā peccāvĕris, *nor did he offer himself as an associate of this mad enterprise, but a leader. Therefore he fled to Asia, scared by a fresh accusation on account of this madness. It is then no excuse for a wrong, that you have done it for a friend.* — Id. de Amic. 11.

6. **Quiă**, *because*, regularly introduces a fact; **quod**, an allegation; **quŏniam**, *since*, has reference to motives: as,

illos quamquam sunt hostes, tămen, quia sunt cīves, mŏnĭtos vŏlo, *although they are enemies, still, because they are citizens, I wish them to be admonished.* — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

quŏniam nondum est perscriptum sĕnātus consultum, ex mĕmŏriā vōbis quid sĕnātus censuĕrit, expōnam. Primum mihi grātiae ăguntur, quod virtūte, consĭlio, prōvĭdentiā meā respublĭca maxĭmis pĕrīcŭlis sit lĭbĕrata, *since the decree of the Senate has not yet been written out, I will recite to you from memory what the Senate voted. In the first place, thanks are rendered to me on the ground that, by my courage, judgment, and foresight, the commonwealth has been freed from the greatest peril.* — Id. III. 6.

7. **Quum** (**cum**), *when*, is always a relative conjunction; **quando** is also used interrogatively: as,

cum tăcent, clāmant, *when they are silent, they cry out.* — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

O rus, quando ego te adspĭciam? *O country, when shall I see thee?* — Hor. Sat. II. 6, 60.

8. **Et...et** means *both ... and*; **tum ... tum** and (more commonly) **cum ... tum** have the same meaning, but emphasize the second member: as,

et prīvātim et publĭcē, *both in private and in public.* — Cic. Verr. V. 1.

tum dēprĕcabĭtur a vōbis, tum ĕtiam pro suo jūre contendet, *he will not only entreat from you, but will claim as his right.* — Id.

9. **Atquĕ (ac)** is used after words of similarity: as,

rătio ordŏque agmĭnis ălĭter se hăbēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētŭlĕrant, *the arrangement and order of the army was otherwise than as the Belgians had reported to the Nervii.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 19.

10. **Autem, ĕnim, vēro** always stand second or third in the clause; the same is generally true of **ĭgĭtur**, and often of **tămen**. — See 2, 4, 5.

11. The same fondness for connecting one sentence closely with the preceding which caused the use of relatives at the commencement of a sentence (§ 48, IV.), led to the employment of **namque, etĕnim, neque**, &c., in the same place: as,

namque me lŭpus fŭgit ĭnermem, *for a wolf fled from me, although unarmed.* — Hor. Carm. I. 22, 9.

44. Formation of Words.

I. Nouns derived from Nouns.

1. Those ending in **um** or **ētum** signify a *collection* or *group: as,*

arboretum, *grove*; **arbustum**, *vineyard* (**arbor**).

2. Diminutives usually end in **ŏlus** or **ŭlus**, often with the feminine and neuter terminations: as,

filiŏlus, *little son* (**filius**); **arbuscula**, *shrub* (**arbor**); **currĭcŭlum**, *little car* (**currus**), or *race-course.*

3. Patronymics generally end in **ădes** or **ĭdes** (F. **as, is**): as,

Aenĕădes, *son of Aeneas* (plural, *companions*); **Pelĕĭdes** (contr. **Pelīdes**) *son of Peleus*; **Tyndăris**, *daughter of Tyndarus.*

II. Nouns derived from Adjectives.

Nouns derived from Adjectives have the termination **ia**, **ĭtas**, or **tūdo**: as,

brĕvĭtas, *shortness* (**brĕvis**); **audācia**, *boldness* (**audax**); **magnĭtūdo**, *greatness* (**magnus**).

III. Nouns derived from Verbs.

1. Nouns formed by adding **or** (fem. **rix**) to the supine stem, denote the person who does the action: as,

victor, **victrix**, *conqueror* (**vinco**).

2. Those formed by adding **io** or **us** (fourth dec.) to the supine stem, express abstractly the idea of the verb: as,

mōtio or **mōtus**, *movement* (**mŏveo**).

3. Those formed by adding **men** or **mentum** to the present stem, indicate the subject, object, or means of the action: as,

flūmen, *stream* or *river* (**fluo**); **dŏcŭmentum**, *proof* (**doceo**).

IV. Adjectives derived from Nouns.

1. The ending **eus** or **āceus** denotes *material:* as,

aureus, *golden* (**aurum**); **chartāceus**, *of paper* (**charta**).

2. The endings **ĭcus** and **īlis** denote *belonging to:* as,

civĭcus and **civīlis**, *belonging to a citizen* (**cīvis**).

3. The terminations **ōsus** and **lentus** indicate fulness: as,

cōpiōsus, *abundant* (**copia**); **opŭlentus**, *wealthy* (**ŏpes**).

4. Many in **tus** are formed like participles: as,

aurātus, *gilded* (**aurum**); **aurītus**, *long-eared* (**auris**); **cornūtus**, *horned* (**cornu**).

5. Adjectives from proper names end in **ānus**: as,

Pompēianus, *of Pompey;* **Rōmanus**, *Roman.*

6. From names of places are also adjectives in **ensis**, **ĭcus**, and **as** (gen. **ātis**): as,

Cannensis, *of Cannæ;* **Pharsālĭcus**, *of Pharsalus;* **Arpīnas**, *of Arpinum* (gen. pl. **-atium**).

V. Adjectives derived from Verbs.

1. Verbal adjectives in **bundus** (chiefly from verbs of the first conjugation) imply *condition* or *act:* as,

errābundus, *apt to stray* (**erro**); **morĭbundus**, *at the point of death* (**mŏrior**); **vitābundus**, *avoiding* (with acc.).

2. Those in **ĭdus** (chiefly from neuter verbs), denote *quality:* as,

călĭdus, *warm* (**căleo**); **callĭdus**, *cunning* (**calleo**); **lūcĭdus**, *bright* (**lūceo**).

3. Those in **ax**, denote a *propensity* or *active quality:* as,

audax, *bold* (**audeo**); **pugnax**, *full of fight* (**pugno**).

4. Those in **ĭlis** and **bĭlis**, denote *possibility* or *aptness:* as,

frăgĭlis, *frail* (**frango**); **amābĭlis**, *lovely* (**ămo**).

VI. Compound Nouns.

Examples of these are —

patrĭcīda, *one who kills his father* (**păter, caedo**).
tubĭcen, *trumpeter* (**tūba, căno**).
tibĭcen, *piper* (**tībia, căno**).
armĭger, *armor-bearer* (**arma, gĕro**).
signĭfer, *standard-bearer* (**signum, fĕro**).
pontĭfex, *priest*, (*bridge-maker*, **pons, făcio**).
auceps, *bird-catcher* (**ăvis, căpio**).

There are numerous other derivative forms, but the above are those which occur most frequently.

Many words are sometimes classed as Derivatives, which are formed by simply adding the termination of the noun, adjective, or verb, to the same root or stem: as, from **rĕg-** *rule*, are formed **rĕg o**, *I govern* or *direct;* **rex** (gen. **rēgis**), *king;* **rēgīna**, *queen;* **rēgālis, rēgius**, *royal;* **regnum**, *royalty;* **rēgio**, *district* under a common rule, or lying in a given range.

PART SECOND.

USE OF WORDS. (SYNTAX.)

45. Definitions.

1. The Subject of a proposition is the person or thing spoken of; the Predicate is that which is stated of the Subject.

2. A word is said to Agree with another, when it is in a corresponding grammatical form; it is said to Govern another, when it requires it to be in a particular Case.

The word so governed is called the Object.

3. The verb **esse**, *to be*, when it connects an attribute with its subject, is called the Copula; otherwise, it is called the Substantive Verb.

I. RULES OF AGREEMENT.

46. Of Nouns.

A Noun used to describe another agrees with it in Case; this is called Apposition: as,

externus timor, maximum concordiae vinculum, *fear of the foreigner, the strongest bond of union.* — Liv. II. 39.

quattuor hic, primum ōmen, ĕquos vīdi, *I saw here four horses, the first omen.* — Virg. Æn. III. 537.

Ancum Marcium rēgem pŏpŭlus creāvit, *the people made Ancus Marcius king.* — Liv. I. 32.

consŭles creantur Caesar et Servilius, *Cæsar and Servilius are made consuls.* — Cæsar B.C. III. 1. (**consules** in the predicate nominative, after the passive **creantur.**)

littĕras Graecas sĕnex dĭdĭci, *I learned Greek letters when an old man* (**senex** in appos. with **ego** understood).

Aristaeus qui ŏlīvae dicĭtur inventor, *Aristæus, who is called the discoverer of the olive.* — Cic. N. D. III. 18.

1. Also in Gender when it can: as,

ŏleae Mĭnerva inventrix, *Minerva the discoverer of the olive.* — Virg. G. I. 18.

2. A Noun in apposition with the locative case is put in the ablative with or without the preposition **in** (§ **55,** III. 3): as,

Antiochiae, cĕlĕbri quondam urbe et cōpiōsa, *at Antioch, once a famous and wealthy city.* — Cic. pro Arch. 3.

mīlĭtes Albae constĭtērunt in urbe mūnīta, *the soldiers halted at Alba, a fortified town.* — Id. Phil. IV. 2.

3. The genitive is used in apposition with possessive pronouns, taking the gender and number of the implied subject: as,

in nostro omnium flētu, *amid the tears of us all.* — Cic. pro Mil. 34.

47. Of Adjectives.

Adjectives, also Adjective Pronouns and Participles, agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case: as,

consŭlāria mūnĕra, *the consular duties;* **hac lēge,** *by this law;* **ūno interfecto,** *one being slain.*

I. With two or more nouns the adjective is plural: as,

Nīsus et Eurўălus prīmi, *Nisus and Euryalus first.* — Virg. Æn. V. 394.

II. With nouns of different genders it either (1) agrees with the nearest: as,

si res, si vir, si tempus ullum dignum fuit, *if any thing, if any man, if any time, was fit.* — Cic. pro Mil. 7.

Or (2) it may be masculine, if they are living beings, neuter if things without life: as,

lăbor (M.) **vŏluptasque** (F.) **sociĕtate quădam inter se nāturāli sunt juncta** (N.), *labor and pleasure are joined to one another by a certain natural alliance.* — Liv. V. 4.

uxor deinde ac lĭbĕri amplexi, *then his wife and children embraced him.* — Id. II. 40.

An adjective (masc. or fem.) may refer to a noun of different gender, when the existence of persons is implied: as,

cŏlōniae alĭquot dēductae, Prisci Latīni appellāti, *colonies were established* [of men] *called Prisci Latini.* — Liv. I. 3.

pars certare părati, *a part ready to contend.* — Virg. Æn. V. 108.

magna pars raptae, *most of the women were seized.* — Liv. I. 9.

This is called Synesis, or **constructio ad sensum.**

III. Adjectives are often used as nouns, meaning persons or things: as,

dĭdĭcit jam dīves ăvārus laudāre dĭsertos, *the rich miser has already learned to compliment the eloquent.* — Juv. VII. 30.

So, constantly, are the possessive pronouns, in military or other special use: as,

suos contĭnebat, *he held his men in check.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 15.

So a noun is sometimes used as an adjective or qualified by an adverb: as,

admŏdum puer, *quite a boy;* **măgis vĭr**, *more of a man;* **fautor ineptē**, *a stupid admirer.* — Hor. Sat. I. 10, 2.

IV. A neuter adjective is used as a noun (1) to denote the abstract quality, or (pl.) things in general; as,

tanta vis est hŏnesti, ut spĕciem ūtĭlĭtatis obscūret, *so great is the force of honor, that it dims the show of gain.* — Cic. de Off. III. 11.

But where the meaning would be doubtful, the feminine is used with **res.** Hence adjectives of the third declension are thus used rarely except in the nom. and acc.: as,

lŏquĭtur de omnĭbus rēbus (not **de omnĭbus**), *he talks about every thing;* but **omnia mihi dixit**, *he told me every thing.*

(2) In apposition with a noun of different gender: as,

vărium et mūtābĭle semper femĭna, *woman, ever fickle and changeful.* — Virg. Æn. IV. 569.

(3) In apposition with an infinitive clause or phrase: as,

aliud est errāre Caesărem nolle, aliud nolle misĕrēri, *it is one thing to be unwilling that Cæsar should err, another to be unwilling that he should pity.* — Cic. pro Lig. 5.

V. Adjectives (especially those formed from proper names), as well as the possessive pronouns, are often used instead of a genitive: as,

ăcies Pompēiāna, *Pompey's line of battle.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 94.
video hĕrīlem filium, *I spy master's son.* — Ter. Eun. II. 2.

The possessive is regularly used instead of the genitive of possession of the personal pronouns: as, **domus mea,** *my house.*

An adjective pronoun sometimes agrees in gender with a word in apposition, rather than with that to which it refers: as,

eam sapientiam interprĕtantur, quam adhuc mortālis nemo est consecūtus (for **id . . . quod**), *they explain that to be wisdom, which no man ever yet attained.* — Cic. de Amic. V.

VI. An adjective in Latin is sometimes best rendered by other forms in English: as,

te quam laetus invīso, *how joyfully I visit thee.* — Catull. 31, 4.
primus vēnit, *he was the first to come.*
eos se invīto adesse dixit, *he said they were there against his will.*

VII. When two qualities of an object are compared, both adjectives are usually in the comparative: as,

longior quam lātior ăcies erat, *the line was longer than it was broad.* — Liv. XXVII. 48.

VIII. Superlatives denoting order and succession, also **mĕdius,** *midst,* **cētĕrus,** *other,* **rĕlĭquus,** *remaining,* are used to designate a part: as,

in colle mĕdio, *on the middle of the hill.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 24.
summus mons, *the top of the height.* — Id. 22.

So, **sērā nocte,** *late at night.*

IX. **Alius . . . alius,** *one . . . another,* implies that the predicate is differently applied in each case: as,

duo rēges ălius alia vīā cīvitatem auxērunt, *two kings enlarged the state, each in his own way.* — Liv. I. 21.

48. Of Relatives.

Relatives serve (1) as nouns in the subordinate clause in which they stand; (2) as connectives, relating directly to some word in the main proposition, which is called the Antecedent.

The use of relatives is much more frequent in Latin than it is in English, owing to the fondness of the ancients for connecting a sentence very closely to the preceding. (See § 43, 11.)

I. Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, their case depending on the construction of the clause in which they stand: as,

utrum ille qui postŭlat ad tantum bellum lēgatum quem vĕlit īdōneus non est qui impĕtret? *is not he who claims for such a war the deputy whom he will, fit to get him?* — Cic. pro Lege Manil. 19.

adsum qui fēci, *here am I who did it.* — Æn. IX. 427.

II. The relative often agrees in gender with the noun (appositive) in its own clause rather than with the antecedent: as,

măre etiam quem Neptūnum esse dīcebas, *the sea, too, which you said was Neptune.* — Cic. N. D. III. 20.

III. The antecedent is often repeated in the relative clause: as,

lŏci nātūra ĕrat haec quem locum nostri castris dēlēgĕrant, *the nature of the ground which our men had chosen for the camp was this.* — Cæs. B. G. II. 18.

Sometimes it is omitted: as,

qui arma căpĕre potuerunt, restĭtērunt, *those who could take arms held their ground.* — Cæs. B.G. IV. 14.

qui cognoscĕrent mīsit, *he sent men to reconnoitre.* — Id. I. 21.

Sometimes it stands only in the relative clause: as,

quas res in consŭlatu nostro gessĭmus attĭgit hic versibus, *he has touched in verse the things which we did in our consulship.* — Cic. Arch. 11.

In such cases, the demonstrative **is** or **hic** usually stands in the principal clause: as,

quae pars civĭtatis călămĭtatem pŏpŭlo Romano intŭlĕrat ea princeps poenas persolvit, *that part of the state which had brought disaster on the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 12.

In a sentence of this class, the relative clause in Latin generally stands first; but in translating, the noun should be transferred, in its proper case, to the antecedent clause, as in the example just quoted.

IV. A relative often stands at the beginning of a clause or sentence where in English a demonstrative must be used: as,

quorum quod sĭmĭle factum? *what ever happened like this?* — Cic. Cat. IV. 8.

quod si făcit — quā impŭdentiā est — eumne testem imprŏbabit quem jūdĭcem probārit? *If he does this — and he is shameless enough for it — will he challenge one as witness whom he has approved as juror?* — Cic. Ros. Com. 15.

V. **Id quod** or **quae res** is used instead of **quod** to relate to an idea or group of words previously expressed: as,

[obtrectatum est] Gabinio dīcam, an Pompēio? an utrique — id quod est vērius? [insult has been offered] *shall I say to Gabinius, or Pompey? or to both, which is nearer the truth?* — Cic. de Leg. Manil. 19.

49. Verbs.

Verbs agree with their subject in person and number; in gender also in the periphrastic forms: as,

ĕgŏ stătuo, *I resolve;* **ōrātio est hăbĭta,** *the plea was spoken.*

I. With two or more singular subjects the verb will be in the plural; and if they are of different persons, it will be in the first rather than the second, or the second than the third: as,

si tu et Tullia vălētis, ego et Cicero valemus, *if you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.* — Cic. Fam. XIV. 5.

But the verb will be singular if the subjects are considered as one whole: as,

haec tua justitia et lēnĭtas ănĭmi flōrescit quŏtīdie măgĭs, *this justice and gentleness of yours flowers daily more and more.* — Cic. pro Marc. 4.

So, too, if they are joined by disjunctives: as,

nĕque fides neque jusjūrandum neque illum mĭsĕrĭcoordia repressit, *not faith, nor oath, nor mercy, checked him.* — Ter. Ad. III. 2, 8.

A collective noun may in poetry take a plural verb: as,

quaerunt pars ădĭtum, *a part seek the entrance.* — Æn. IX. 507.

Also such singulars as **quisque,** *every;* **ŭterque,** *each.*

II. The personal pronoun, as subject, is usually omitted, unless emphatic: as,

lŏquor = *I speak;* **ĕgŏ loquor,** = *it is I that speak.*

So an indefinite subject: as, **fĕrunt,** *they say.*

III. The infinitive is sometimes used instead of the personal form in narrative; this is called the Historical Infinitive: as,

tum Catilīna pollĭcēri tăbŭlas nŏvas, *then Catiline promised an abolition of debts.* — Sallust, Cat. 21.

ego instāre, ut mihi respondēret, *I pressed him to answer me.* — Cic. in Verr. II. 77.

II. RULES OF GOVERNMENT.

50. Genitive.

The Genitive, in its primary meaning, denotes Origin or Possession. It is used —

I. To define more precisely the meaning of a noun (Subjective Genitive): as,

pŏtentia Pompēi formīdŏlōsa erat, *the power of Pompey was alarming.* — Sall. Cat. 19.

The limiting genitive frequently stands in the predicate: as,

altĕrum gĕnus est eorum qui rērum pŏtīri vŏlunt, *a second class consists of the would-be masters of affairs.* — Cic. Cat. II. 8.

1. A phrase or clause with **esse**, *to be*, is often limited by the genitive; most frequently the genitive of adjectives and abstract nouns: as,

neque sui jūdĭcii [esse] dēcernĕre, *it was not for his judgment to decide.* — Cæs. B.C. I. 35.

tĭmĭdi est optare nĕcem, *it belongs to a coward to desire death.* — Ov. Met. IV. 115. (Compare § **73**, I.)

The genitive used in this way often takes the place of a neuter adjective: as, **săpientis est** (not **sapiens est**), *it is wise.*

Instead of the genitive of personal pronouns, the neuter of the possessive is used: as,

mentīri non est meum, *it is not for me to lie.* — Ter. Heaut. II. 2.

2. The genitive of quality requires an adjective: as,

vĭr summae hŏnestatis, *a man of the highest honor.*

The ablative is also used in this way: as,

vĭr summo consĭlio, *a man of the highest prudence.* (§ **54**, II.)

3. The genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition; as,

nōmen insāniae, *the word insanity.* — Cic. Tusc. III. 4.

4. A genitive of specification, after adjectives, is common in the poets and late prose writers: as,

intĕger vītae scĕlĕrisque pūrus, *upright of life and clear of guilt.* — Hor. Od. I. 22, 1.

II. To denote the Whole, after words signifying a Part (Partitive Genitive). These are —

1. Nouns or Pronouns: as,

pars mīlĭtum, *part of the soldiers*; **quis nostrum**? *which of us?*

2. Numerals, Comparatives, and Superlatives: as,

alter consŭlum, *one of the (two) consuls.*

plurimum tōtius Galliae ĕquitatu vălet, *is strongest in cavalry of all Gaul.* — Caes. B.G. V. 3.

3. Neuter Adjectives and Pronouns: as,

tantum spatii, *so much space*; **aliquid nummorum**, *a few pence*; **plāna urbis**, *the level parts of the town.*

4. Adverbs, especially of Place and Quantity: as,

sătĭs pĕcūniae, *enough money;* **ubĭnam gentium sumus?** *where in the world are we?* **inde loci,** *next in order.*

Instead of the Partitive Genitive, **ex** with the ablative is often used: as,

ūnus ex tribūnis, *one of the tribunes.*

III. To denote the object of some action implied by the governing word (OBJECTIVE GENITIVE). Words of this class are —

1. Nouns expressing action or mental emotion: as,

grātia bĕnĕficii, *gratitude for a favor.*

laudator tempŏris acti, *one who praises the past.* — Hor. de Arte Poetica, 173.

injuria mŭliĕrum Sabīnarum, *the wrong done the Sabine women.*

mĕmŏria nostri tua, *your memory of us.* — Cic. Fam. XII. 17.

vim suorum pro suo pĕrīcŭlo dēfendebant, *they parried the attack on their comrades as if it were their own peril.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 110.

So, rarely, with the possessive pronouns: as,

pĕrīcŭlo invĭdiae meae, *with risk of odium against me.* — Cic. Cat. II. 2.

2. Adjectives of Fulness or Want, and those expressing feeling or desire; also (frequently) **similis,** *like:* as,

sermonis plēnus ōrātor, *a speaker full of words.* — Cic. Brut. 68.

erat plēna lictōrum et impĕrĭōrum prōvincia, *the province was full of lictors and officials.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 32.

Cethēgus qui dixisset se semper bŏnorum ferrāmentorum studiōsum fuisse, *Cethegus, who had said that he had always been a fancier of good cutlery.* — Cic. Cat. III. 5.

3. Verbal Adjectives, especially with the terminations **ax** and **ns**: as,

ĕrat in oppĭdo multĭtūdo insŏlens belli, *there was in the town a population unused to war.* — Cæs. B.C. II. 36.

hăbetis dŭcem mĕmŏrem vestri oblītum sui, *you have a leader who thinks of you and forgets himself.* — Cic. Cat. IV. 9.

justum ac tĕnācem prōpŏsĭti vĭrum, *a man just and steadfast to his purpose.* — Hor. Od. III. 3, 1.

4. Several adjectives which also govern the dative; especially **sĭmĭlis**, *like;* **par, aequālis**, *equal;* **commūnis** *common to;* as,

proprium sĕnectūtis, *peculiar to old age.* — Cic. Sen. 11.

The relation of the Objective Genitive may also be expressed by prepositions: as,

ŏdium in Caesărem, *hatred of Cæsar*, (or, **odium Caesăris**).

IV. As the object of the following classes of verbs: —

1. Of remembering, forgetting, and reminding, — when used generally, to denote the subject on which the mind is exercised: as,

oblīviscĕre caedis atque incendiorum, *turn your mind from slaughter and conflagrations.* — Cic. Cat. I. 3.

But the accusative must be used with these verbs to express a particular thing remembered or forgotten: as,

hoc te admŏneo, *I remind you of this.*

2. Of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, to express the charge, and sometimes the penalty: as,

C. Marium scĕlĕris ac parricīdii nĕfārii mortuum condemnābĭmus? *shall we convict Caius Marius, now dead, of crime and infamous treason?* — Cic. pro Rabir. 10.

C. Gracchum căpitis damnavērunt, *they condemned Caius Gracchus to death.*

The crime may be expressed by the ablative with **de**; the punishment by the ablative alone: as,

de ambĭtu condemnatos, *convicted of bribery.* — Suet. Jul. 41.

vĭtia autem hŏmĭnum atque fraudes damnis, ignōmĭniis, vincŭlis, verbĕribus, exĭliis, morte, damnantur, *while the vices and crimes of men are punished with fines, dishonor, chains, scourgings, exile, death.* — Cic. de. Or. I. 43.

3. **Mĭsĕreor, miseresco**, *pity:* also, the Impersonals **mĭsĕret**, *pity;* **pĭget**, *disgust;* **poenĭtet**, *repent;* **pŭdet**, *shame;* **taedet** or **pertaesum est**, *weary*, with the accusative of the person affected (§ 39, 2): as,

me meorum factorum atque consĭlĭorum numquam poenĭtēbit, *I shall never repent of my acts and counsels.* — Cic. Cat. IV. 10.

4. **Intĕrest** and **rĕfert**, *it concerns*, — the subject of the verb being a neuter pronoun, an infinitive clause, or the subjunctive with **ut**: as,

omnem pŏtentiam ad ūnum conferri pācis interfuit, *it was the interest of peace that all power should be put in one man's hands.* — Tac. Hist. I. 1.

Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the possessive is used in this construction, in the abl. sing. fem.: as,

quid id rĕfert tuā? *how does it concern you?* — Plaut. Rud. 178.

Rĕfert is rarely used in any other way.

NOTE. — **Intĕrest** is used in the three following ways: —

(1.) Impersonally, with the genitive: as, **intĕrest exercĭtūs**, *it is for the advantage of the army;*

(2.) Personally, with the dative: as, **intĕrest exercĭtui**, *he is present with the army;*

(3.) With the accusative and prepositions: as, **intĕrest inter exercĭtum et castra**, either, *he is between* — or, *there is a difference between — the army and camp.*

5. Some verbs of plenty and want, separation and emotion: as,

quid est quod dēfensiōnis indĭgeat? *what is there that needs defence?* — Cic. Ros. Am. 12.

6. Also, sometimes, **pŏtior**, *get possession of;* as always in the expression **pŏtīri rērum**, *to be masters of affairs.* — Cic. Fam. I. 8.

The Genitive is also used after the adverbs **prīdiē**, *the day before;* **postrīdiē**, *the day after* (compare § **56**, II. 1): as,

postridie ejus diēi, *the next day.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 12.

NOTE. — For the Genitive of Price, see § **54**, IX.

51. DATIVE.

The dative (TO or FOR) denotes the person or thing whose interest is affected. It is used —

I. With words expressing likeness, fitness, nearness, and the like: as,

sĭmĭlis patri, *like his father;* **prōfuit ămīcis**, *he helped his friends.*

So after **misceo**, *mix;* **idem**, *same*, and many other words, especially in the poets, and in imitation of Greek usage.

With some adjectives of this class prepositions may also be used: as,

aptus ad rem militārem, *fit for military service.*

si inīquus es in me jūdex, *if you are an unfair judge towards me.* — Cic. Fam. II. 1.

When the dative is required by the structure of the sentence as a whole, rather than by any single word, it is called the dative of advantage and disadvantage (**datīvus commŏdi et incommŏdi**): as,

sĭnĕ dōte poscо tuam sŏrōrem filio, *I ask your sister for my son without a dowry.* — Plaut. Trin. II. 4, 98.

laudavit mihi frātrem, *he praised my brother* (out of regard for me: **laudavit fratrem meum** would imply no such motive).

Othōni in Hispaniam cŏmes, *a companion of Otho's into Spain.* — Tac. Hist. I. 22.

To signify *in defence of*, **pro** must be used: as, **pro patriā mŏri**, *to die for one's country.* — Hor. Carm. III. 2, 13.

Mihi, tibi, nobis, and **vobis** are used in questions and expressions of wonder and praise, to denote a certain interest felt: as, **quid mihi Celsus agit?** *pray, what is Celsus about?* — Hor. Ep. I. 3, 15. This is called the Ethical Dative (**datīvus ethĭcus**).

II. As the indirect object of transitive verbs which take the accusative of the direct object: as,

hunc librum tibi mitto, *I send you this book.*

NOTE. — Motion is always expressed in prose by **in** or **ad** with the accusative; but the poets sometimes use the dative: as,

dum inferret deos Latio, *until he brought the gods to Latium.* — Virg. Æn. I. 5.

A few verbs of this class, as **dōno**, *present*, **induo**, *clothe*, **circumdo**, *surround*, may also take the accusative and ablative: as,

donat cŏrōnas mīlĭtibus, *he gives wreaths to the soldiers;* or, **donat milites cŏrōnis**, *he presents the soldiers with wreaths.*

III. With many verbs (transitive in English) which signify favor, obedience, command, pardon, envy, and the like: as,

cur mihi invĭdes? *why do you envy me?*

cīvĭtati serviebat, *he served the state.*

So with adjectives or nouns derived from such verbs; as,
invĭdia mihi, *envy towards me*; **credulus illis**, *trusting them*.

These verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally, in which case the dative may be retained: as,

cuī parci pŏtuit? *who could be spared?* — Liv. XXI. 14. (§ 73, I.)

For the dative with other Impersonals, see § 39, 1.

Sometimes the accusative of the thing is used with the dative of the person after such verbs as **impĕro**, *command* or *require*; **invĭdeo**, *envy* or *grudge*; **aequo**, *make equal*; **mĭnor**, *threaten*; **cēdo**, *yield*; **sŭadeo**, *urge*: as,

impĕrat oppĭdānis dēcem tălenta, *he exacts ten talents of the townspeople*.

IV. With many verbs usually governing the accusative when advantage or disadvantage is implied: thus, **consŭlo**, with acc. *consult*, with dat. *consult one's interest*; **convĕnio**, with acc. *meet*, with dat. *suit*; **mĕtuo, tĭmeo**, with acc. *fear*, with dat. *be apprehensive for*; **mŏdĕror, tempĕro**, with acc. *arrange*, with dat. *control*. So **căveo**, *beware*, **prospĭcio**, *foresee*, and others.

Mĕdeor, mĕdĭco, *heal*; **praestōlor**, *wait*; and **ausculto**, *hearken*, may take either dative or accusative.

V. After many verbs compounded with the following prepositions, and retaining their force in the compound: **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, re** (insep.) **sub**, and **super**: as,

omnĭbus interfui proeliis, *I took part in all the battles*. — Cæs. B.C. III. 87.

hĭbernis Labiēnum praepŏsuit, *he placed Labienus in charge of the winter-quarters*. — Cæs. B.G. I. 54.

Also active compounds of **circum, de, ab, ex**: as,

classe Caesări ēreptā, *the fleet being snatched away from Cæsar*. — Cæs. B.C. III. 111.

But when there is a distinct indication of place, the preposition is repeated: as,

dētrahĕre ānŭlum de dĭgĭto, *to withdraw a ring from the finger*.

VI. After **esse**, *to be*, denoting the possessor: as,

est mihi lĭber, *I have a book.*

erat Darĭo mīte et tractābĭle ingĕnium, *Darius had a gentle and yielding temper.* — Curt. III. 2.

This is the usual form to denote possession; **habeo**, *I have*, generally signifying rather, *I hold.* After **nōmen est** and similar expressions, the name is usually in the dative by attraction: as,

nam mĭ est Auxilio nomen, *for my name is Help.* — Pl. Cist. I. 3.

VII. To signify the purpose or end, frequently joined with another dative of the person: as,

tertiam ăciem nostris subsĭdio mīsit, *he sent the third line as a relief to our men.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 52.

tum sunt carmĭna cordi, *then songs are a delight.* — Lucr. V. 1389.

VIII. After the gerundive, to denote the person to whom the necessity exists: as,

haec vobis provincia est defendenda, *this province is for you to defend* [to be defended by you]. — Cic. Leg. Man. 6, 14.

Often, also, with perfect participles; with **vidēri**, *seem*; and, in the poets and later writers, with almost any passive verb: as,

nulla tuārum audīta mihi nĕque visa sŏrōrum, *no one of thy sisters has been either heard or seen by me.* — Virg. Æn. I. 326.

52. Accusative.

The Accusative is the case of the direct object. It is used —

I. After transitive verbs: as,

lēgatiōnem suscēpit, *he undertook the embassy.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 3.

Many neuter verbs are sometimes used transitively: as,

meum cāsum luctumque doluērunt, *they have bewailed my misfortune and grief.* — Cic. Sest. 69, 145.

Tĭtius, Pindărĭci fontis qui non expalluit haustus, *Titius, who did not turn pale at draughts of the Pindaric fount.* — Hor. Ep. I. 3, 10.

So occasionally in the passive: as,

rīdētur ab omni conventu, *he is laughed at by the whole assembly.* — Hor. Sat. I. 7, 22.

This occurs especially with verbs of tasting, smelling, &c: as,

Epĭcūrus, hŏmo mĭnĭme rĕsīpiens patriam, *Epicurus, a man who smacked very little* [i.e. possessed very little of the characteristic wit] *of his native country.* — Cic. N.D. II. 17.

Also with accusatives of meaning *cognate* to that of the verb: as,

vīvĕre eam vītam, *to live that kind of life.* — Cic. de Sen. 21.

II. After many neuter verbs, which become active when compounded with prepositions. These include —

1. Verbs of motion: as,

dēlūbra deum ădĭbis, *thou wilt visit the shrines of the gods.* — Lucr. VI. 75.

2. Compounds of **circum** and some other prepositions: as,

cīves qui circumstant sĕnātum, *the citizens who throng about the Senate.* — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

III. As a secondary object (1) after verbs of asking and teaching; also **cēlo**, *hide:* as,

hoc vos dŏceo, *I teach you this.* — Cic. de Orat. II. 47.

nihil suprā deos lăcesso, nec pŏtentem ămīcum largiōra flāgĭto, *I do not importune the gods for any thing more, nor do I demand more liberal gifts from a powerful friend.* — Hor. Carm. II. 18, 11.

So with passives: as,

Cāto, rŏgātus sententiam, ōrātiōnem hăbuit, *Cato, being asked his opinion, delivered a speech.* — Sall. Cat. 52.

The ablative with a preposition is often used after these verbs: always, to express the person, after **pĕto, postŭlo,** and **quaero**: as,

pācem ab Rōmānis pĕtiērunt, *they begged peace from the Romans.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 13.

(2) After many active verbs compounded with prepositions: as,

Hĭbērum cōpias trajēcit, *he threw his forces across the Iber.* — Liv. XXI. 23.

(3) In Apposition after verbs of choosing, &c. (See § 46.)

IV. In neuter pronouns and adjectives of number (in an adverbial sense), especially with neuter verbs: as,

quidve mŏror, *or why do I delay?* — Virg. Æn. II. 101.

pauca mīlĭtes hortātus, *having briefly exhorted the soldiers.* — Sall. Jug. 49.

So **id tempŏris**, *at this time.* — Cic. Cat. I. 4, 10.

Similar to this is the so-called Synecdochical or Greek Accusative, used by the poets to denote the part affected: as,

flāvāque căput nectentur ŏlīvā, *and their heads shall be wreathed with yellow olive.* — Virg. Æn. V. 309.

So with the passive (used reflectively) of **cingo** and similar verbs: as,

Inūtĭle ferrum cingĭtur, *he girds on his useless sword.* — Virg. Æn. II. 510.

V. In exclamations: as,

O fortūnātam rempublĭcam! *O fortunate republic!* — Cic. Cat. II. 4.

VI. As subject of the infinitive in dependent clauses, after verbs of knowing, thinking, hearing, wishing, and telling (**verba sentiendi et declarandi**).

See, for examples of this use, Oratio Obliqua (§ **67**, I. 2), and Substantive Clauses (§ **70**, III.).

NOTE. — For the accusatives of time and place, see § **55**. — For the accusative after prepositions, see § **56**.

53. VOCATIVE.

The Vocative is used in direct address: as,

Septĭmi, Gādes ădĭtūre mēcum, *Septimius, who art ready to go with me to Gades.* — Hor. Carm. II. 6, 1.

Sometimes the nominative is used instead: as,

almae fīlius Maiae, *O son of benignant Maia.* — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 43.

audi, tu pŏpŭlus Albānus, *hear, thou people of Alba.* — Liv. I. 24.

54. Ablative.

The Ablative, in general, implies either instrument or separation. It is used —

I. To express cause, means, and specification: as,

vultu Mīlōnis perterrĭtus, *scared by the countenance of Milo.* — Cic. Mil. 15, 41.

nec tantum Phoebo gaudet Parnāsiă rūpēs, *nor does the cliff of Parnassus delight so much in Phoebus.* — Virg. Buc. VI. 29.

ferro rumpenda per hostes est via, *a road must be cut through the enemy with the sword.* — Id. Æn. X. 371.

suo jūre noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poētas, *with peculiar right our Ennius calls poets holy.* — Cic. Arch. 8.

certē non tŭlit ullos haec cīvĭtas aut glōriā clārĭōres, aut auctōrĭtāte grăvĭōres, aut hūmānĭtāte pŏlītĭōres, *certainly this city never produced any more illustrious in glory, or weighty in authority, or refined in culture.* — Cic. de Orat. II. 37.

The motive which influences the mind of the person acting is expressed by the ablative alone; the object exciting the emotion requires **ob** or **propter** with the accusative: as,

nōn ob praedam aut spŏliandi cŭpīdĭne, *not for booty, or through the desire of plundering.* — Tac. Hist. I. 63.

So **causā** and **grātiā** after a genitive, or **causā** with a possessive: as,

legātōs ad Caesărem sui purgandī grātiā mittunt, *they send deputies to Cæsar for the purpose of clearing themselves.* — Cæs. B.G. VII. 43.

meā causā, *for my sake.* — Ter. Eun. V. 8, 40 (1070).

With living beings, instrumentality is expressed by **per**, or by **ŏpĕrā** with a genitive or possessive: as,

pĕr Antĭŏchum, *by the aid of Antiochus.* — Liv. XXXIII. 18.

meā ŏpĕrā, *by my aid.* — Cic. de Sen. 4. So **per vim** (as well as the ablative **vi**), *by force.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 14.

Note. — For the ablative of crime and penalty, see § **50**, iv. 2.

II. With an adjective or a limiting genitive, to denote manner and quality: as,

pŏpŭlus magnā vōce me vērē jūrasse jūrāvit, *the people swore with a loud voice that I had sworn truly.* — Cic. Fam. V. 2.

mōre hŏmĭnum invĭdent, *after the manner of men they envy.* — Cic. pro Balbo, 26.

ănĭmo mĕliōre sunt quam pars patrĭcĭōrum, *they are better disposed than a portion of the patricians.* — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

hŏmĭnis esse spĕcĭē deos confĭtendum est, *we must admit that the gods are of human form.* — Cic. N.D. I. 18.

Manner is also expressed by **cum**, and in a few cases by the ablative alone: as,

mĭnus cum cūrā, *less carefully.* — Plaut. M.G. III. 1, 6.

hōc ŏnus fĕram stŭdio ĕt industriā, *I will bear this burden zealously and diligently.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 4.

Accompaniment properly requires **cum**: as,

nostri cum fundĭtōribus săgittāriisque flūmen transgressi, *our troops having crossed the river with the slingers and archers.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 19. (But see § 25, end.)

Verbs of contending take **cum** (or dat. in poetry).

There is no essential distinction between the ablative and the genitive of quality (§ 50, I. 2), except that the genitive is exclusively used to denote measure, classification, or requirement: as,

suādēre princĭpi multi lăbōris, *to counsel a prince is a thing requiring great labor.* — Tac. Hist. I. 15.

III. With the verbs **ūtor,** *use;* **fruor,** *enjoy;* **fungor,** *fulfil;* **pŏtior,** *get;* **vescor,** *feed,* and most of their compounds; also **dignor,** *deem worthy:*

ūtar vestrā bĕnignĭtāte, *I will avail myself of your kindness.* — Cic. Arch. 8.

Pŏtior also governs the genitive, as always in the expression, **pŏtīrī rērum,** *to possess the power.* — Cic. Fam. I. 8.

IV. After the adjectives **dignus,** *worthy;* **indignus,** *unworthy,* **frētus,** *relying,* and **praedĭtus,** *endowed:* as,

dea carmĭnĕ dignă est, *the goddess is worthy of song.* — Ov. Met. V. 344.

V. After comparatives, instead of **quam**, *than:* as,

ōcior eurō [equivalent to **ōcior quam eurus**], *swifter than the east wind.* — Virg. Æn. VIII. 223.

The adverbs **plus, amplius,** *more;* **mĭnus,** *less,* with several comparatives of measure or distance, are often used without **quam**, leaving the grammatical structure of the sentence unchanged: as,

plus septingenti capti, *more than seven hundred were taken.* — Liv. XLI. 12.

plus tertiā parte interfectā, *more than a third being slain.* — Cæs. B.G. III. 6.

spătium non amplius pĕdum sexcentorum, *a space not broader than* 600 *feet.* — Id. 38.

The ablative also shows the degree of difference: as,

quo mĭnus cŭpĭdĭtātis, eo plus auctōrĭtatis, *the less greed, the more weight.* — Liv. XXIV. 28.

VI. After words implying separation, and plenty or want: as,

Fŏrum Appi, differtum nautis, *Forum Appii, crammed with bargemen.* — Hor. Sat. I. 5, 3.

Ephŏrus calcārĭbus ĕget, *Ephorus needs the spur.* — Quint. X. 1.

cūris hŏmĭnum gaudia misces, *thou minglest joys with the cares of men.* — Cat. 64.

magno me mĕtu lĭbĕrābis, *you will free me from great fear.* — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

Prepositions express the place more definitely: as,

exīre ex urbe, *to go out from the city.* — Cic. Cat. I. 5.

NOTE. — For the genitive of plenty or want, see § **50,** III. 2.

VII. After **ŏpus** and **ūsus,** *need:* as,

nunc vīrĭbus ūsus, *now there is need of strength.* — Virg. Æn. VIII. 441.

So, often, the abl. neuter of the perfect participle: as,

cauto ŏpust, *we need caution.* — Plaut. Capt. II. 1, 28.

Opus (rarely **ūsus**) may also stand in apposition with the thing needed: as,

illud quod maxĭme ŏpus est, *that which is most needed.* — Ter. Ad. IV. 7, 22 (740).

VIII. Often, without a preposition, after perfect participles denoting origin: as,

Cĕrĕre nāti, *the children of Ceres.* — Cic. N.D. II. 24.

But the prepositions **ab**, **de**, **ex**, are frequently used, — regularly, in speaking of remote descent: as,

ab his majōrĭbus orti, *born of these ancestors.* — Hor. Sat. I. 5.

IX. To denote price: as,

signa sestertium sex mīlĭbus quingentis vendĭta, *the statues were sold for six thousand five hundred sesterces.* — Cic. Verr. IV. 6.

stābunt tĭbi tua foedĕra magno, *your treaty will cost you dear.* — Ov. Met. VII. 486.

To express *indefinite* price or value, the genitive is used: —

1. Of neuter adjectives, with verbs of valuing: as,

magni intĕrest esse kălendis Jānuārĭis in republĭca duo consŭles, *it is of great importance that on the first day of January there should be two consuls in the commonwealth.* — Cic. Mur. 37.

With other verbs, the ablative must be used, except these genitives: **tanti**, *so much*; **quanti**, *how much*; **plūris**, *more*; **mĭnōris**, *less.*

2. Of certain nouns: as,

falso an vēro laudent non flocci făciunt, *whether they praise truly or falsely, they care not a straw.* — Plaut. Trin. 210.

The genitives so used are **nihĭli**, *nothing*, **assis**, *farthing*, **flocci**, *lock of wool*, and a few others.

X. Ablative Absolute. — Two ablatives, generally a noun and participle, often stand in apposition with each other, having no grammatical dependence on the sentence in which they occur. This is called the Ablative Absolute: as,

Pharsālĭco proelio facto, a Caesăre discessit, *after the battle of Pharsalia had been fought, he departed from Cæsar.* — Cic. pro Deiot. 5.

dīs immortālĭbus dŭcĭbus, *under the guidance of the immortal gods.* — Id. Cat. II. 9.

Note. — One ablative is always Subject, and the other Predicate, in the clause in which they stand.

Sometimes the participle or an adjective is in apposition with a phrase or clause, or is used adverbially: as,

incerto quid pĕtĕrent, *since it was uncertain what they sought.*
auspicato, *after taking the auspices.* — Tac. Hist. I. 84.

NOTE. — For the ablative, to denote the agent after passive verbs, see § **56**, IV. — For prepositions governing the ablative, see § **42**, II. — For the ablative of Time and Place, see § **55**.

55. TIME AND PLACE.

I. Time *when* takes the ablative; time *how long*, the accusative: as,

adventu in Galliam Caesăris, *at the arrival of Cæsar in Gaul.* — Cæs. B.G. V. 54.
dies contĭnuos trīginta, *for thirty days together.* — Id. 13.
paucis post diēbus, *a few days after.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 82.

Post is here an adverb; it may also be **post paucos dies**. The same usage exists with **ante**, *before*, and with **ab**, *away from*.

1. The use of a preposition gives more precision: as,

in diēbus proxĭmis dĕcem, *within the next ten days.* — Sall. Jug. 28.
lūdi per dĕcem dies, *games through ten days.* — Cic. Cat. III. 8.

2. Rarely the ablative expresses duration of time: as,

quattuordĕcim annis exsĭlium tŏlĕrāvit, *he endured exile fourteen years.* — Tac. Ann. I. 53.

II. Extent of space takes the accusative: as,

fossas quindĕcim pĕdēs lātas, *trenches fifteen feet broad.* — Cæs. B.G. VII. 72. (Compare § **54**, V.)

Measure is often expressed by the genitive: as,

vallo pĕdum xii, in circuĭtu xv mīlium sese contĭnēbant, *they kept close in an entrenchment of twelve feet* [height], *and of fifteen miles' circuit.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 30.

Distance takes the accusative or ablative: as,

Zăma quinque diērum ĭter ā Carthāgĭne ăbest, *Zama is a five days' journey distant from Carthage.* — Liv. XXX. 29.
trīginta mīlĭbus passuum infra eum lŏcum, *thirty miles below that place.* — Cæs. B.G. VI. 35.

III. To express relations of place, prepositions are necessary, except with the names of towns and small islands; also **dŏmus**, *home*, **rūs**, *the country*, and a few other nouns in special relations. With these nouns —

1. The name of the place *from which* is in the ablative: as,

Brundŭsio profectus ĕs, *you set out from Brundusium.* — Cic. Att. I. 15, 2.

2. The name of the place *to which* is in the accusative: as,

cum e Cĭlĭcĭā dēcēdens Rhŏdum vēnissem, *when, on my way from Cilicia, I had reached Rhodes.* — Cic. Brut. 1.

rus cras cum fīlio ībo, *to-morrow I will go into the country with my son.* — Ter. Ad. V. 3, 54.

Prepositions must be used to denote neighborhood: as,

ad Tarentum, *to* (not *into*) *Tarentum.* — Cic. de Senect. 4.

3. The name of the place *where* was originally put in a special case called the Locative. This case ended in **ī**, and is generally the same in form with the Dative: as,

Rōmae, *at Rome;* **Karthāgĭnī**, *at Carthage;* **Athēnis**, *at Athens;* **Curĭbus**, *at Cures.*

In the second declension the old form in **ī** is retained: as,

Corinthi, *at Corinth;* **Lanuvi**, *at Lanuvium.*

In the third declension this case sometimes ends in **ĕ**, like the ablative, especially when the metre requires it in poetry: as,

Tībŭrĕ vel Găbiis, *at Tibur or Gabii.* — Hor. Ep. II. 2, 3.

So **dŏmī**, *at home;* **bellī, militiae**, *in military service;* **humī**, *on the ground;* **rūrī**, *in the country* (**rurĕ** is *from the country*).

hiĕmāre Dyrrachii, Apolloniae, omnĭbusque oppĭdis mărĭtĭmis, *to winter in Dyrrachium, Apollonia, and all the seaboard towns.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 5.

ĕrat ēdictum Pompēi nōmĭne Amphipŏli prōpŏsĭtum, *an order had been put up in Pompey's name at Amphipolis.* — Id. 102.

Veiis de caelo lăpĭdāvĕrat, *it had rained stones at Veii.* — Liv. XXVII. 37.

te dŏmi mănēbo, *I will wait for you at home.* — Hor. Ep. I. 5, 3.

4. A possessive may stand with **dŏmus**: as,

nos dŏmum tuam vŏces, *call us to thy home.* — Tac. Agr. 46.

When it is modified in any other way, a preposition is generally used: as,

in M. Laecae dŏmum, *into the house of Marcus Lœca.* — Cic. Cat. I. 4.

5. The preposition is omitted before the ablative of a few other nouns: as,

terrā mărīque, *by land and sea.* — Tib. I. 3, 56.
tōtā Sĭcĭlĭā, *through all Sicily.* — Cic. Verr. IV. 23.

So, very commonly, in poetry: as,

lītŏre curvo, *on the curving shore.* — Virg. Æn. III. 16.

IV. The way *by which* is put in the ablative: as,

Aurēlĭā vĭā prŏfectus est, *he set out by the Aurelian Way.* — Cic. Cat. II. 4.

56. Prepositions.

I. Twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; eleven the ablative. (See § **42.**)

1. **In** and **sub** take the accusative when they denote motion; the ablative when they denote rest: as,

Aristīdes in contiōnem vēnit, *Aristides came into the assembly.* — Cic. de Off. III. 11.
Thĕmistŏcles dixit in contiōne, *Themistocles said in the assembly.* — Id.
sub monte consēdit, *he encamped at the foot of a mountain.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 48.
sub vespĕrum Caesar portas claudi jussit, *towards evening Cæsar ordered the gates to be shut.* — Id. II. 33.

But after verbs of placing, **in** usually takes the ablative: as,

exercĭtum in hībernis collŏcāvit, *he established the army in winter-quarters.* — Cæs. B.G. III. 29.

2. **Sŭper** governs the ablative when it means *concerning;* otherwise the accusative (or abl. in poetry): as,

hac sŭper rē, *concerning this matter.* — Cic. Att. XVI. 16.
summa sŭper culmĭna tecti, *over the roof of the house.* — Virg. Æn. II. 694.

3. **Subter** governs the accusative; but sometimes the ablative in poetry: as,

subter fastīgia tecti, *below the roof of the house.* — Virg. Æn. VIII. 366.

subter lītŏre, *below the shore.* — Catull. 65, 7.

4. In giving the day of the month, the preposition **ante**, *before*, is usually omitted: as,

xv. kălendas Augustas, *the fifteenth day before the kalends of August* (July 18). — Tac. Hist. II. 91.

Often **ante diem (a. d.)**, with an ordinal, is used like a preposition governing an accusative: as,

is dies erat a. d. v. kal. Apr., *this day was the fifth day before the kalends of April* (March 28). — Cæs. B.G. I. 6.

This phrase may even be governed by a preposition: as,

in a. d. v. kălendas Nŏvembres, *to the fifth day before the kalends of November* (October 28). — Cic. Cat. I. 3.

5. **Tĕnus** (which follows its noun) sometimes governs the genitive: as,

Corcўrae tĕnus, *as far as Corcyra.* — Liv. XXVI. 24.

But regularly it takes the ablative: as,

căpŭlo tĕnŭs, *up to the hilt.* — Virg. Æn. V. 553.

II. Certain adverbs are sometimes construed like prepositions: —

1. **Prīdiē, postrīdiē, prŏpius, proxĭme, versus**, and **usque**, and (less frequently) the adjectives **prŏpior** and **proxĭmus**, may be followed by the accusative (Compare § **50**, end): as,

prīdie nōnas Jūnias, *the day before the nones of June* (June 4). — Cic. Fam. III. 4. 1.

2 The adverb **pălam** may govern the ablative: as,

pălam duōbus exercĭtĭbus, *in the presence of two armies.* — Liv. XXV. 18.

3. **Clam** may take either accusative or ablative: as,

clam mātrem suam, *without her mother's knowledge.* — Plaut. M.G. 112 (II. 1, 33).

clam vōbis, *without your knowledge.* — Cæs. B.C. II. 32.

And prepositions are often used as adverbs.

III. Some prepositions which imply comparison, as **ante**, *before;* **post**, *after*, — like the adverb **prius**, *before*, — are followed, like comparatives, by **quam**; several words, or even clauses, sometimes coming between: as,

nĕque ante dīmīsit eum quam fĭdem dĕdit, *nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge.* — Liv. XXXIX. 10.

IV. The ablative, with **a** or **ab**, is regularly used after passive verbs, to denote the agent, if a person, or if spoken of as a person: as,

Turpilius, jussus a Mĕtello causam dīcĕre, *Turpilius, being ordered by the consul to plead his cause.* — Sall. Jug. 69.

This use of the ablative of the *agent* must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *instrument:* as,

occīsus glădio, *slain by a sword;* but **occīsus ab hoste**, *slain by an enemy.*

NOTE. — For the so-called dative of the agent with the gerundive, see §§ **51**, VIII. **73**, I.

III. SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

57. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. (See § 27.)

The Tenses of Finite Moods are distributed into two classes: —

1. PRIMARY, including the Present, both Futures, and Perfect (definite).

2. SECONDARY, including the Imperfect, Perfect (historical), and Pluperfect.

In compound sentences, a Primary tense in the leading clause is followed by a Primary tense in the dependent clause; and a Secondary tense is followed by a Secondary: as,

vĕnit ut nos vĭdeat, *he comes to see us.*
vēnit ut nos videat, *he is come to see us.*
vēnit ut nos vidēret, *he came to see us.*
vĕni ut nos videas, *come to see us.*

I. The Perfect Subjunctive is regularly a primary tense, and is used to express any past action depending upon a verb in a primary tense: as,

ex ĕpistŏlis intellĕgi lĭcet, quam frĕquens fuĕrit Plătonis auditor, *it may be judged from his epistles how constant a listener to Plato he was.* — Cic. Orat. 4.

But occasionally it is used in an aoristic sense: as,

eō discordiae ventum, ut ad Vĭtellium perfŭgĕrit, *the dissension reached such a height that he fled to Vitellius.* — Tac. Hist. I. 60.

In this way a perfect subjunctive or infinitive, depending upon a primary tense, may itself be followed by secondary tenses: as,

sic mihi perspĭcĕre vĭdeor, ĭtă nātos esse nos ut inter omnes esset sŏcĭĕtas quaedam, *I think that I see that we were so born that there exists among all a certain alliance.* — Cic. de Amic. 5.

The perfect subjunctive is also used for a future perfect: as,

ostendit si sublāta sit vendĭtio bŏnorum, illum pĕcūniam grandem āmissurum, *he shows that if the sale of the property shall be stopped, he will lose much money* [**si sublata erit, amittet**]. — Cic. Rosc. Am. 38.

II. The Present is often used in narrative for the Historical Perfect, and may be followed by Secondary Tenses: as,

Sĕnātus dēcernit ŭti in lĭbĕris custōdiis hăbērentur, *the Senate decrees that they should be held in free custody.* — Sall. Cat. 47.

III. The Tenses denoting completed action are used much more accurately in Latin than in English: as,

sī ĕris mĕrĭtus, fĭet, *if you deserve* [shall have deserved], *it shall be done.* — Plaut. Trin. IV. 3, 61.

vīvo et regno sĭmul ista rĕlĭqui quae vos ad caelum fertis, *I live and reign, as soon as I leave* [have left] *those scenes which you extol to heaven.* — Hor. Ep. I. 10, 8.

After **postquam, posteāquam,** and **ŭbi,** the Perfect is used where we should expect the Pluperfect: as,

postquam id ănĭmum advertit, *when he had perceived this.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 24.

Dum, *while* (not *as long as*), is usually followed by the Present Indicative, even when referring to past time: as,

dum haec in colloquio gĕruntur, Caesări nuntiātum est, *while these things were going on in the conference, it was announced to Cæsar.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 46.

The Perfect Indefinite is often found (followed by secondary tenses), where the regular Perfect would be used in English: as,

mihi ut urbī sātis esset praesĭdii consultum atque prōvīsum est, *I have considered and provided that the city should have a sufficient guard.* — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

IV. In dependent clauses, the tenses of the infinitive have no time of their own, but are present, past, or future, relatively to the time of the verb upon which they depend: as,

nostros non esse inferiōres intellexit, *he ascertained that our men were not inferior.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 8.

quam Jūno fertur terris măgis omnĭbus cŏluisse, *which Juno is said to have cherished above all lands.* — Virg. Æn. I. 15.

spērant se maxĭmum fructum esse captūros, *they hope to receive the greatest advantages.* — Cic. de Amic. 21.

The present infinitive, after a verb in the past, must often be rendered by the perfect infinitive in English; this is most frequent with **pŏtui**, *could*; **dēbui, ŏportuit**, *ought*: as,

scīre potuit, *he might have known.* — Cic. pro Mil. 17.

qui vĭdebatur omnīno mŏri non debuisse, *who seemed one that ought not to have died at all.* — Cic. pro Arch. 8.

Mĕmĭni, and some other verbs, in an account of what the speaker has personally witnessed, take the present infinitive: as,

mĕmĭni Cātōnem mēcum dissĕrĕre, *I remember Cato's discoursing with me.* — Cic. de Amic. 3.

V. The statement of a general truth, following a secondary tense, observes the rule of connection of tenses: as,

jūdĭcābant esse alĭquid nātūrā pulchrum atque praeclārum quod suā sponte pĕtĕrētur, *they were of opinion that there is something beautiful and glorious by nature, which is sought for its own sake.* — Cic. de Senect. 13.

NOTE. — In letters, secondary tenses are often used for primary; as if the letter were *dated* when it is *received*.

58. Moods.

The Moods of a Latin verb are the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitive.

I. The Indicative is regularly employed for the leading verb of a sentence: it is used in direct assertions or questions, and in historical narrative.

II. The Subjunctive is used chiefly for dependent constructions, — especially to denote any thing as contingent, conceived of, or desired, — its tense being determined by that of the verb on which it depends. (See § **57.**) In particular it is found, —

1. In many Conditional sentences, the condition being often implied, §§ **59, 60, 61, 62.**

2. In certain relations of Cause or Motive, § **63.**

3. In clauses which express Purpose or Result, §§ **64, 65.**

4. In intermediate and subordinate clauses, chiefly relative or interrogative, §§ **66, 67.**

5. In wishes and commands (in the present and perfect), to take the place of the Imperative, § **68.**

III. The Imperative is used in commands; also, in early writers and poets, in prohibitions: as,

consŭlīte vōbis, prospĭcīte patriae, conservāte vos. *take measures for your safety, provide for the country, preserve yourselves.* — Cic. Cat. IV. 2.

nĭmium ne crēde cŏlōri, *do not trust complexion overmuch.* — Virg. Buc. II. 17.

Prohibitions are regularly expressed by the second person singular of the perfect subjunctive with **nē**; **nōlī** with the infinitive; or by **căve** with the subjunctive: as,

ne terrĭtus fuĕris, *be not terrified.* — Tac. Hist. I. 16.
nōlī pŭtāre, *do not think.* — Cic. Brut. 33.
căve faxis, *do not do it.* — Ter. Heaut. 187 (I. 2. 13).

The future imperative is used where there is a distinct reference to future time, especially in statutes, edicts, and wills: as,

cum valetudĭni tuae consulueris, tum consulīto navigationi, *take care of your health first; then look to your sailing.* — Cic. Fam. XVI. 4. (See § **24,** III. 2.)

IV. The Infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is construed either as the subject or as the object of the leading verb. In this use, it is found especially in the construction called **ōrātio oblīqua.** (See § 67.)

In other cases, hardly any tense is used except the present, expressing no distinct relation of time: as,

mitto quaerĕre, *I refrain from asking.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 19.

The poets and later writers use the infinitive after adjectives, or to express a purpose: as,

dūrus compōnĕre versūs, *harsh in composing verses.* — Hor. Sat. I. 4, 8.

fŭrit tē rĕpĕrīre, *he rages to find thee.* — Id. Carm. I. 15, 27.

It may also be used (with subject-acc.) in Exclamations: as,

te in tantas aerumnas propter me incĭdisse! *alas, that you should fall into such grief for me!* — Cic. Fam. XIV. 1.

59. Conditional Sentences.

I. When any thing is stated, the truth of which is made to depend on the truth of some other statement, contained in a subordinate clause, the sentence is called a Conditional Sentence.

The Principal clause — that containing the conclusion — is called the **apodŏsis**; the Subordinate clause — that stating the condition — is called the **protăsis**: as,

si qui exīre vŏlunt, connīvēre possum, *if any wish to depart* (**protăsis**), *I can keep my eyes shut* (**apodŏsis**). — Cic. Cat. II. 12.

II. The statement of the condition in Latin (**protăsis**) is regularly introduced by **si,** *if;* **sin,** *but if;* **nĭsĭ,** *unless;* but a clause introduced by an indefinite relative (*whoever*), or a relative conjunction (*when, since,* and the like), may be considered as equivalent to a conditional clause: as,

quam se cumque in partem dedisset, omnium fuit făcĭlĕ princeps, *in whatever direction he applied himself, he easily took the first place.* — Cic. de Off. III. 16.

The statement of the consequence or result depends in form on the grammatical structure of the sentence, which may require a participle, infinitive, or phrase: as,

quod si praetĕrea nēmo sĕquatur, tămen se cum sōlā dĕcĭma lēgione ĭtūrum, de qua non dŭbĭtaret, *but if no one else would follow, still he would go with the tenth legion alone, of which he had no doubt.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 40.

si quos adversum proelium et fŭga Gallorum commŏvēret, hos si quaerĕrent rĕpĕrīre posse, *if any were troubled by this check, and by the flight of the Gauls, they might find if they would ask.* — Id.

III. Any tense of the Indicative may be used to express both condition and result in its appropriate time: as,

si ergo ăpud infĕros mĭsĕri non sunt, ne sunt quĭdem ăpud infĕros ulli, *if, therefore, the wretched are not in the infernal regions, there is no one there at all.* — Cic. Tusc. I. 6.

sānābĭmur sī vŏlēmus, *we shall be healed if we wish.* — Id. III. 6.

quicquid jūrārunt, ventus et undă răpit, *whatever they have sworn* [i.e., if they have sworn any thing], *the winds and waves sweep away.* — Prop. II. 28, 8.

IV. The Subjunctive is used in both members of conditional sentences: —

1. The Present, in reference to future time, to express a supposition less vividly or as less probable than when the future indicative is used: as,

nec si mūnĕrĭbus certēs, concēdat Iollas, *nor if you should vie in gifts, would Iollas yield.* — Virg. Buc. II. 57.

haec si tēcum patria lŏquātur, nonnĕ impetrāre dēbeat? *If thy country should thus speak to thee, ought she not to prevail?* — Cic. Cat. I. 8.

Often the future indicative stands in the apodosis; as,

si dēfĭciant vīres, audācia certe laus ĕrit, *if strength should fail, boldness at least will have praise.* — Prop. II. 10, 5.

2. The Secondary tenses, when the supposition is known to be false; the imperfect referring to present time, the pluperfect to past: as,

si meum consĭlium auctōrĭtasque vălŭisset, tu hŏdiē ĕgēres, nos lĭbĕri essēmus, respublĭca non tot dŭces et exercĭtus amīsisset, *if my judgment and authority had prevailed* [as they did not], *you would this day be poor* [which you are not], *we should be free, the republic would not have lost so many leaders and armies.* — Cic. Phil. II. 15.

The indicative (in apodosis) sometimes expresses what ought to have been done, or is intended, or already begun: as,

si Rōmae Cn. Pompēius prīvātus esset hoc tempŏrĕ, tămen is ĕrat dēlĭgendus, *if Cnæus Pompey were a private citizen at Rome at this time, nevertheless he ought to be selected.* — Cic. Leg. Man. 17.

in amplexūs fīliae ruēbat, nĭsi lictores obstĭtissent, *he was about rushing into his daughter's arms, unless the lictors had prevented.* — Tac. Ann. XVI. 32.

When a subjunctive is required in the apodosis of a conditional clause, by the structure of the sentence of which it forms a part, the pluperfect may be represented by the participle in **rus** with the perfect subjunctive of **esse**: as,

ădeo părāta sēdĭtio fuit, ut Othōnem raptūri fuĕrint, nĭ incerta noctis tĭmuissent, *so far advanced was the conspiracy, that they would have seized upon Otho if they had not feared the uncertainties of the night* [**răpuissent nĭ tĭmuissent** following **ut**]. — Tac. Hist. I. 26.

3. The Subjunctive is sometimes used to express a condition of a general nature, referring indefinitely to any one of a series of acts; in this case the indicative is used in the apodosis to state a repeated or customary action, or general truth: as,

mĕmŏria mĭnuĭtur nĭsi eam exerceas, *the memory grows weak unless you exercise it.* — Cic. Sen. 7.

id ŭbi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum mittebat, *when he* [the herald] *had said this, he would throw* [used to throw] *a spear into their territories.* — Liv. I. 32.

NOTE. — Verbs expressing power, propriety, etc., may take the indicative in apodosis; the imperfect to express present time, the perfect and pluperfect for past: as, **satius erat,** *it were better.*

60. Implied Conditions.

The subordinate member of a conditional sentence (that containing the condition), is frequently omitted. Under this head belong most of the subjunctives which appear to be independent verbs, and which would not always take this mood if the condition were fully stated (See § 68).

In this usage the perfect subjunctive is especially common; and the second person singular, to denote some indefinite person.

The Subjunctive in implied conditions is employed as in the following examples: —

1. In its so-called Potential use, referring to an indefinite subject: as,

tum in lecto quōque vĭdēres sŭsurros, *then on each couch you might see whisperings.* — Hor. Sat. II. 8, 77.

Here a complete sentence would require the pluperfect: thus,

vidisses si adfuisses, *you would have seen if you had been there.*

2. In cautious, modest, or hypothetical statement: as,

nec ullam mōrum partem măgis laudāvĕris, *nor would one commend more highly any one of their customs.* — Tac. Germ. 17.

vĕlim sic tĭbi persuādeas, *I wish you would persuade yourself of this.* — Cic. Fam. XV. 4.

vellem adesset M. Antōnius, *I wish Mark Antony were present.* — Id. Phil. I. 7.

Vĕlim refers to future time, **vellem** to present or past time, in a wish for something known to be impossible.

3. In questions asked with a certain hesitation or doubt: as,

quid ĕgo carmĭne plūra commĕmŏrem? *why should I relate more in verse?* — Catull. 64, 116.

4. In conceding a point, or supposing a case; — here the inference or conclusion is the clause omitted: as,

fuĕrit ille Brūtus, qui dŏmĭnātu rēgio rempublĭcam lĭbĕrāvit, *suppose there was a Brutus who freed the republic from the tyranny of the kings.* — Cic. Phil. I. 6.

si jam sint id ădepti, *suppose they have already obtained it.* — Id. Cat. II. 9.

61. Conditional Particles.

Certain Particles implying a condition are followed by the Subjunctive. These are —

1. Particles of comparison, — **tamquam, quăsĭ, vĕlŭti,** &c.: as,

tamquam mŏdo ex deōrum concĭlio descendisset, *as if he had just come down from the council of the gods.* — Cic. N.D. I. 8.

quăsi plūres fortūnāti sint quam infēlīces, *as if more were fortunate than unfortunate.* — Cic. Tusc. I. 36.

2. The concessive particles, **quamvis,** *however much;* **lĭcet** and **ut,** *granting that;* **cum,** *although;* and, in later writers, **quamquam,** *although:* as,

ităque eum qui audiunt, quamvis ipsi infantes sint, tămen illo mŏdo confĭdunt se posse dīcĕre, *therefore those who hear him, however incapable of speaking they may themselves be, nevertheless feel confident that they can speak in that manner.* — Cic. Orat. 23.

ut nēmĭnem ălium nĭsi T. Pătīnam rŏgasset, scīre pŏtuit, *even if he had asked no one but Titus Patina, he might have known.* — Cic. Mil. 17.

quamquam per dictātorem dīlectus hăbĭtus esset, *although the levy had been held under the authority of the dictator.* — Liv. II. 32.

cum merēde dŏcēret, *although he taught for pay.* — Cic. de Orat. I. 28.

Quamquam and **etsi** introduce the statement of a fact, and regularly take the indicative; **quamvis, lĭcet,** and **ut,** of a supposed case, and take the subjunctive; **cum,** signifying *although,* while used as equivalent to **quamquam,** takes the subjunctive by special use. (See § **62,** 1.)

3. **Dum, dummŏdŏ,** and **mŏdŏ,** *provided:* as,

multa admīranda sunt, ēlĭgĕre mŏdo cūrae sit, *many points are deserving of admiration, provided there be care in selecting.* — Quint. X. 1, 131.

Note. — A Relative is often equivalent to a Demonstrative preceded by a Conditional, Causal, or Final Particle. (See §§ **63, 64.**)

62. Relations of Time.

I. **Cum (quum)**, meaning *when*, takes the indicative; *since*, or *although*, the subjunctive: as,

cum se inter ĕquĭtum turmas īnsĭnuāvērunt, *when they have worked their way among the troops of horse.* — Cæs. B.G. IV. 33.

cum sōlĭtūdo et vīta sine ămīcis insĭdiarum et mĕtūs plēna sit, *since solitude and a life without friends is full of treachery and fear.* — Cic. de Fin. I. 20.

But **cum**, *when*, is followed by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive in narration: as,

cum essem in Cĕrămĭco, *when I was in the Ceramicus.* — Cic. Att. I. 10.

II. **Dum, dōnĕc, quoad**, *until;* and **antĕquam, priusquam**, *before*, may take the subjunctive, —

1. In reference to future time;
2. To express something desired or anticipated; or,
3. (The secondary tenses) in historical narration: as,

prĭusquam ad portum vĕnias, *before you come to the harbor.* — Ter. Ad. IV. 2, 44.

dum nŏvi măgistrātūs sortīrentur prōvincias, M. Baebius transīrĕ in Epīrum est jussus, *until the new magistrates should draw lots for their provinces, Marcus Bœbius was ordered to cross into Epirus.* — Liv. XXXV. 24.

festīnandum cētĕris vĭdēbātur, antĕquam crescĕret invălĭda adhuc conjūrātio, *the others were of opinion that it was best to hasten, before the yet weak conspiracy should gather strength.* — Tac. Hist. I. 33.

trĕpĭdātiōnis ălĭquantum ĕlĕphanti ēdēbant, dōnec quiētem ipse tĭmor fēcisset, *the elephants caused some confusion, until their very fear had caused quiet.* — Liv. XXI. 28.

These particles also sometimes take the subjunctive in statements of a general truth or customary action: as,

priusquam populus suffragium ineat, in incertum comitiorum eventum patres auctores fiunt, *before the people come to the vote, the senate forestall the uncertain result of the election.* — Liv. I. 17.

63. Cause or Reason.

I. The conjunctions **quod** (sometimes **quiă**), *because*, and **quŏniam** and **quando**, *since*, are followed by the subjunctive when the reason is stated not as a fact, but as a motive in the mind of another, and even of the speaker or writer himself: as,

Drūsus rettŭlit ad Sĕnātum dē illo quod in eum ordĭnem consul tam grăvĭter in contiōne esset invectus, *Drusus laid his* [Philippus's] *case before the Senate, on the ground that he, although consul, had inveighed so bitterly against that body in the public assembly.* — Cic. de Orat. III. 1.

accēdit illa quŏque causa, quod a cetĕris forsĭtan ĭtă pĕtītum sit ut dīcĕrent, ut utrumvis salvo offĭcio făcĕre se posse arbitrarentur, *there is this reason besides* [in my own mind], *that others have perhaps been invited to speak, in such a way that they supposed they might act either way with a clear conscience.* — Id. Rosc. Am. 1. (See § 66, I.)

Non quō (negatively **non quin**) is often used for **non quod**: as,

non quo furtum făcĕre stŭdŭĕrit, *not that he desired to commit a theft.* — Ter. Eun. 28.

II. Relatives implying a cause or reason take the subjunctive, being frequently strengthened by **ut, utpŏte, quippe,** or **praesertim**: as,

fătĕor mē errasse, qui hoc mālŭĕrim, *I confess that I erred in choosing this.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 49.

quippe qui ne in oppĭdum quĭdem nĭsi perrāro vĕnīret, *no doubt, for he hardly ever came to town at all.* — Id. 18.

praesertim quod tuā neglĭgentiā factum arbĭtrēmur, *particularly as we think it happened by your neglect.* — Id. Flacc. 17.

III. **Cum** causal, signifying *since*, takes the subjunctive: as,

cum omnis pŏpŭli Rōmāni rēlĭgio in sacra et in auspĭcia dīvīsa sit, *since the whole religion of the Roman people is divided into ceremonies and auspices.* — Cic. N.D. III. 2.

But in the sense of **quod**, *on the ground that*, it takes the indicative: as,

grātŭlor tibi cum tantum vălĕs ăpŭd Dolabellam, *I congratulate you on your influence with Dolabella.* — Cic. Fam. IX. 14.

64. Purpose.

I. Final Clauses, or those expressing a Purpose, take the subjunctive after relatives (**qui**=**ut is**), or the conjunction **ut** (**ŭti**), *in order that*, and (negatively) **ne**, **ut ne**, *lest:* as,

mŏnet ut ignes in castris fĭĕri prōhĭbeat, ne qua ejus adventūs prŏcul signĭfĭcātio fiat, *he advises him to prohibit fires being made in camp, in order that no signs of his arrival may be shown at a distance.* — Cæs. B.G. VI. 29.

ut ne sit impūne, *that it be not with impunity.* — Cic. Mil. 12.

II. **Quo** is used for **ut eo**, especially with comparatives: as,

castris ad Băbўlōniam pŏsĭtis quo majōre ănĭmo căpessĕrent bellum, *the camp being pitched near Babylon, in order that they might enter into the war with greater spirit.* — Curt. III. 2, 2.

Note. — Compare **quōmĭnus**, (= **ut eo minus**,) after verbs of hindering. — § **65**, III.

III. After expressions denoting fear, **ut (ne non)** is to be translated *that not;* **ne**, *that* or *lest:* as,

omnes lăbōres te excĭpĕre vĭdeo; tĭmeo ut sustĭneas, *I see you taking upon yourself all labors; I fear you will not endure them.* — Cic. Fam. XIV. 2.

păvor cēpĕrat mīlĭtes, ne mortĭfĕrum esset vulnus, *fear had seized the soldiers that the wound* [of Scipio] *was mortal.* — Liv. XXIV. 42.

IV. **Ut** or **ne** is often omitted, especially after verbs of wishing, advising, &c.; as,

Syro ignoscas vŏlo, *I wish that you would pardon Syrus.* — Ter. Heaut. V. 5, 22.

căve ignoscas, *do not pardon.* — Cic. Lig. 5.

Note. — For **ut**, signifying *although*, see § **61**, 2. In the sense of *when, as, how*, it takes the indicative: as, **ut vălet?** *how is she?* Pl. Trin; **ut vīdi,** *when I saw.* — Virg. Buc. VIII. 41.

V. The purpose of an action is expressed in Latin in various ways; but never (except rarely in poetry) by the simple infinitive, as in English. The sentence, *he sent men to plough the field*, may be rendered, —

1. By the subjunctive with **ut**: as,

hŏmĭnes mīsit ut agrum ărārent.

2. By the subjunctive with **qui**: as,

homines misit qui agrum ararent.

3. By the Gerund or Gerundive with **ad**: as,

homines misit ad agrum arandum. (§ **73**, IV.)

4. By the Gerundive with **causā** or **gratiā**: as,

homines misit agri arandi causā. (§ **73**, III.)

5. By the Future Participle: as,

homines misit agrum aratūros. (§ **25**, I.)

Purpose is also expressed by the Former Supine in many verbs: as, **spectātum lūdos ivit**, *he went to see the games.* (§ **74**.)

65. Consequence or Result.

I. Clauses denoting a Result take the subjunctive after relatives and the conjunction **ut** (negative, **ut non**): as,

Augusto prompta ac prōfluens quaeque dĕcēret princĭpem ēlŏquentia fuit, *Augustus possessed a ready and fluent power of speaking, such as became a prince.* — Tac. Ann. XIII. 3.

Quae fuit eōrum tanta ĭnīquĭtas ut plācāri pŏpŭlo Rōmāno non possent nĭsĭ vĭri tāles occĭdissent? *How great was their injustice* [that of the gods] *that they could not be reconciled to the Roman people unless men of such eminence should fall?* — Cic. N.D. III. 6.

II. **Quin**, *that not*, is used after negative expressions, denoting hinderance, resistance, doubt, and suspension of effort: as,

est dēterrĭta numquam quin flēret, *she was never prevented from weeping.* — Tib. I. 3, 13.

non dŭbĭto quin hanc sălūtem antĕpōnas illi victōriae, *I do not doubt that you value this security more highly than that victory.* — Cic. Lig. 10.

Many of these expressions may also be followed by the infinitive, or by **ne** with the subjunctive: as,

prōhĭbentur ădīre ad fīlios [also **ne adeant**], *they are forbidden to visit their own sons.* — Cic. Verr. V. 45.

III. **Quōmĭnus**, *that not*, may be used after verbs of hindering: as,

nec aetas impĕdit, quōmĭnus agri cŏlendi stŭdia tĕneāmus, *nor does the time of life prevent us from retaining the taste for tilling the ground.* — Cic. de Senect. 17.

IV. The subjunctive stands in relative clauses —

1. After **dignus**, *worthy*; **indignus**, *unworthy*; **aptus**, **īdōneus**, *fit*; **ūnus** and **sōlus**, *only*: as,

idonea mihi Laelī persōna vīsa est, quae dē ămīcĭtĭa dissĕrĕret, *the person of Laelius seemed to me a suitable one to discourse of friendship.* — Cic. de Amic. I.

nil admīrāri prŏpe rēs est ūnă sōlăque, quae possit făcĕre et servāre beātum, *to be surprised at nothing is almost the sole and only thing which can make and keep one happy.* — Hor. Ep. I. 6, 1.

2. After general expressions denoting existence and non-existence: as,

ĕrant qui Helvidium mĭsĕrārentur, *there were some who pitied Helvidius.* — Tac. Ann. XVI. 29.

nihil est illōrum, quin [= **quod non**] **ĕgo illi dixĕrim**, *there is none of these things which I have not said to him.* — Plaut. Bacc. III. 9, 89.

undĕ agger comportāri posset, nihil ĕrat rĕlĭquum, *there were no materials left from which a mound could be got together.* — Cæs. B.C. II. 15.

3. After **quam**, *than*: as,

majōres arbŏres caedēbant, quam quas ferre mīles posset, *they cut larger trees than a soldier could carry.* — Liv. XXXIII. 5.

66. Intermediate Clauses.

I. A Relative, or other subordinate clause, takes the Subjunctive, when it is regarded as an integral part of the thought or expression of some other person than the speaker or writer.

Many such clauses may be so regarded or not, as the writer chooses: as,

prīmam pŏsuit eam de qua mŏdo dixi, quae orta esset ex praesensione rerum fŭturarum, *he first mentioned that of which I have just spoken* [direct statement] *which* (according to him) *had its origin in the fore-feeling of the Future.* — Cic. N.D. II. 5. (See § **63**, I.)

II. A clause depending on a verb in the subjunctive will also be in the subjunctive, if regarded as an integral part of the sentence on which it depends: as,

qui a scrībendi consuētūdĭne ad dīcendum vĕnit, hanc adfert fācultatem, ut etĭam sŭbĭto si dīcat, tămen illa quae dicantur sĭmĭlia scriptorum esse vĭdeantur, *he who passes from the practice of writing to speaking, brings with him this power, that even if he speak without preparation, yet what he says seems like written words.* — Cic. de Orat. I. 33. [**etiam subito si dicit, tamen illa quae dicuntur similia scriptorum esse videntur.**]

III. Intermediate Clauses in the **oratio oblīqua** take the Subjunctive. (See the following section.)

67. Oratio Obliqua.

If a quotation is made in the words of the original speaker, it is called Oratio Recta (*direct discourse*). But if it is made to depend on some verb of speaking or thinking, varying the form of the words from that originally used, it is called Oratio Obliqua (*indirect discourse*).

In English, an indirect quotation is introduced by the conjunction *that*.

I. The Latin form for quotations is as follows: —

1. In Indirect Questions the subjunctive is used: as,

quid sit fŭturum cras fŭge quaerĕre, *avoid inquiring what will be to-morrow.* [direct question, **quid est futurum cras?**] Hor. Carm. I. 9, 13.

nec quĭbus rătionĭbus sŭpĕrare possent, sed quemadmŏdum ūti victorĭā debĕrent cogĭtabant, *nor did they* (the army of Pompey) *reflect by what means they could win the victory, but in what manner they should use it.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 83.

Thus **quid quaeris?** (direct question) means, *what do you ask?* **scio quid quaeras** (indirect question) means, *I know what you ask;* **scio quod quaeris** (direct assertion) means, *I know the thing you ask.* The indic. is rarely used for indir. questions.

NOTE. — **Nescio quis,** *I know not who,* is sometimes used (generally in the way of disparagement), to introduce a direct assertion; being nearly equivalent to **aliquis** or **quidam,** *some one,* and may take the indicative: as,

quin ĕtiam fuit audiendus Licinius nescio qui, *then too you had to listen to one Licinius.* — Cic. Mil. 24.

Nescio an, *I know not whether,* is often used as equivalent to *perhaps,* and regularly takes the subjunctive.

2. A Declarative sentence, when quoted, takes the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, the subject being put in the accusative, and the verb in the appropriate tense of the infinitive: as,

Crassus vălet, *Crassus is well;* **dĭcit Crassum vălēre,** *he says that Crassus is well.*

scripsit epistŏlam, *he has written a letter;* **dĭcit se scripsisse ĕpistŏlam,** *he says he has written a letter.*

non laetor, *I am not glad;* **nĕgo me laetāri,** *I say I am not glad.*

mihi vĭdeor sătis et esse deos et quāles essent ostendisse, *I think I have shown clearly enough, both that there are gods, and of what nature they are.* — Cic. N.D. II. 28. (§ 57, v.)

Esse here expresses an indirect statement; **essent,** an indirect question.

The principal clause of a Conditional Sentence (apodosis) when indicative in the Oratio Recta, follows in the Oratio Obliqua the general rule for Declarative sentences; but when subjunctive, it is represented by the future participle with **esse** if present or imperfect, or **fuisse** if pluperfect: as,

nĭsĭ jūrasset scĕlus se facturum arbitrābatur [scelus faceret], *he thought he would incur guilt unless he should take the oath.* — Cic. Verr. I. 47.

jūrant ītă Cĭcĕrōnem lŏcūtūrum fuisse [lŏcūtus esset], *they swear that Cicero would have spoken so.* — Quint. X. 2, 17.

NOTE. — The subjunctive is not used as a principal verb, except in the apodosis of a conditional sentence (See § 60).

The subject of the Infinitive is sometimes omitted, when it would be easily understood: as,

rŏgāvi pervēnissentne Agrĭgentum; dixit pervēnisse [sc. ea], *I asked whether they* (the curtains) *had reached Agrigentum; he answered that they had.* — Cic. Verr. IV. 12.

II. Subordinate clauses in the **oratio oblīqua** take the subjunctive, the tense being determined by that of the principal verb (see § 57 also, § 66. I.): as,

L. Lentŭlus consul sĕnātui reiquĕ publĭcae se non dēfŭturum pollĭcētur, si audacter ac fortĭter sententĭas dīcere vēlint, *Lucius Lentulus the consul promises not to desert the Senate and the republic, if they are willing to speak their minds boldly and bravely* [**non dĕĭro ... si vŏlētis**]. — Cæs. B.C. I. 1.

Ariovistus respondit: si quid ipsi a Caesăre ŏpus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; ... sĭbi autem mīrum vĭdēri, quid in suā Galliā, quam bello vīcisset, aut Caesări aut omnīno pŏpŭlo Rōmāno nĕgōtii esset, *Ariovistus answered, that, if he wanted any thing of Cæsar, he would have come to him; ... but that he wondered what concern either Cæsar or the Roman people at all had with his Gaul, which he had conquered in war* [**si quid ŏpus esset ... vēnissem; ... mīrum vĭdētur, quid in mea Gallia, quam bello vīci, ... Caesări ... nĕgōtii sit**]. — Cæs. B.G. I. 34.

But the indicative frequently stands in a clause of this character, where it states an independent fact, and is not a part of the general assertion: as,

quis neget haec omnia quae videmus deorum potestate administrari? *who can deny that all these things we see are ruled by the power of the gods?* — Cic. Cat. III. 9.

1. An Imperative in the Oratio Recta becomes a subjunctive in the Oratio Obliqua: as,

nē committĕret, *let him not bring it about* [**ne commīsĕris**]. — Cæs. B.G. I. 13.

2. A Question is put in the infinitive, unless in the second person, in which case it becomes subjunctive: as,

si vĕtĕris contŭmēliae oblīvisci vellet, num ĕtiam rĕcentium injūriarum mĕmŏriam [se] depōnĕre posse? *if he were willing to forget the ancient disgrace, could he also lay aside the memory of recent outrages?* [**num possim?**] — Cæs. B.G. I. 14.

quid sĭbi vellent? *what did they wish?* [**quid vultis?**] — Id. 44.

III. 1. A future infinitive is often expressed by **fŏrĕ** (**fŭtūrum esse**) **ut** with the subjunctive; regularly so in passive or deponent verbs: as,

rēbantur ĕnim fŏre ut exercĭtus impĕrātōrem persĕquĕrētur, *for they thought that the army would follow the general.* — Cic. N.D. III. 6.

nĭsi nuntii de Caesăris victoriā essent adlati, existĭmabant plerīque futurum fuisse uti amittĕretur, *unless news of Cæsar's victory had been brought, most thought he would have been lost.* — Cæs. B.C. III. 101.

2. After verbs signifying *hope, promise,* and the like, the subject of the infinitive, whether a noun or a personal or reflective pronoun, must always be expressed: as,

promīsit se venturum, *he promised to come.*

spērat se nĕgōtium confecturum, *he hopes to finish the business.*

But where there is no future participle, **fŏre ut** with the subjunctive must be used: as,

sperat fŏre ut possit, *he hopes to be able.*

pollĭcētur fŏre ut frumentum adfĕratur, *he promises that corn shall be brought* (more rarely, **adlatum iri** or **fore**).

IV. 1. The passive of verbs of saying, &c., may either be used impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive; or personally, followed by the infinitive alone: as,

prīmi trāduntur arte quādam verba vinxisse, *they are related to have been the first to combine words by a certain art* [**also, tradĭtur eos primos,** etc.] — Cic. Orat. 13.

2. The infinitive passive may be used impersonally after these verbs: as,

in eo ipso in quō praedĭcātiōnem nōbĭlĭtātemque despĭciunt, praedĭcāri de se ac nōmĭnāri vŏlunt, *in that very work, in which they disparage renown and celebrity, they desire that they may be renowned and named.* — Cic. Arch. 10.

V. After a comparison, in the Oratio Obliqua, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive is usually continued: as,

nullam căpĭtālĭōrem pestem quam vŏluptātem corpŏris hŏmĭnĭbus dīcēbat ā nātūrā dătam [not **quam vŏluptas**], *he said that no more deadly evil had been given to men by nature than bodily pleasure.* — Cic. de Senect. 12.

68. Wishes and Commands.

I. The subjunctive (often strengthened by the particles **ut, utĭnam, o si**) is used in wishes; the primary tenses in reference to future time; the secondary to express a hopeless wish, the imperfect in present time, the pluperfect in past: as,

sērus in caelum rĕdeas, *mayst thou return late to the skies.* — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 45.

ŭtĭnam me mortuum vidisses, *would that you had seen me dead.* — Cic. ad Q. Fr. I. 3, 1.

The primary tenses of the subjunctive so used are often equivalent to an imperative (see § **58**, III.): as,

ne semper ūdum Tĭbur et Aesŭlae dēclīve contemplĕris arvum, *do not for ever gaze at watery Tibur and the sloping fields of Aesula.* — Hor. Carm. III. 29, 6.

II. With verbs of wishing and permitting the infinitive is generally used: as,

te tuā frui virtūte cŭpĭmus, *we wish you to reap the benefit of your virtue.* — Cic. Brut. 97.

neu sĭnas Mēdos ĕquĭtāre ĭnultos, *nor permit the Medes to make incursions with impunity.* — Hor. Carm. I. 2, 51.

But the subjunctive may be used without **ut**: as,

vellem mos esset, *I would it were the custom.* — Ter. Ad. IV. 1, 16. (§ **64**, IV.)

III. **Jŭbeo**, *command*, and **vĕto**, *forbid*, take the accusative and the infinitive; other verbs of commanding, the dative with **ut** and the subjunctive: as,

omnem sĕnātum ad se convĕnīre jussit, *he commanded the entire senate to come to him.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 5.

suis impĕrāvit ne quod omnīno tēlum in hostes reĭcĕrent, *he ordered his soldiers to hurl back no weapon at all against the enemy.* — Id. I. 46. (But **impĕro hoc fieri.**)

69. Subjunctive in Relative Clauses.

The various relative clauses have been already treated of, under the special heads to which they belong. They may be classed under the following titles: —

1. General relatives in **protasis**, §§ **59, 60, 61.**
2. Temporal clauses (relative adverbs of time), § **62,** IV.
3. Relative implying a Cause, § **63,** II.
4. Relative of Purpose, § **64,** I.
5. Relative of Consequence or Result, § **65,** I. & IV.
6. Relative in Intermediate Clauses, § **66.**
7. Relative clauses in **oratio oblīqua**, § **67.**

Note. — In general, the relative with a definite antecedent takes the indicative in direct construction; with an indefinite antecedent, the subjunctive: as,

hi sunt qui ĭtă pŭtant, *these are they that think so.*

sunt qui ita putent, *there are some who think so.* (§ **65,** IV. 2.)

70. Substantive Clauses.

A Substantive Clause is a clause or phrase — usually the indicative with **quod**, the subjunctive with **ut**, or the accusative with the infinitive — which is construed like a noun, as the subject or object of a leading verb, or in apposition with the subject or object.

The subordinate verb in a substantive clause is usually in the subjunctive, as in § **66.** For examples, see §§ **64, 65, 67, 68**; also the following: —

I. Verbs implying motive or desire generally take **ut** (**nē**) with the subjunctive (see §§ **64, 65, 68**): as,

concēdo tĭbi ut ea praetĕreas, *I allow you to pass over these points.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 19.

When verbs of this class are used for a mere expression of opinion, they take the accusative with the infinitive: as,

concēdo non esse miserōs qui mortui sint, *I grant that those who are dead are not miserable.* — Cic. Tusc. I. 7.

II. Impersonal verbs and other expressions denoting happening and existence, take a subjunctive introduced by **ut** (**ut non**), as subject (see § **65**): as,

sĕquĭtur ut cujusquĕ gĕnĕris nŏtă quaerātur, *it follows that the mark of each class should be sought.* — Cic. Orat. 23.

accĭdit ut esset plēna lūna, *it chanced to be full moon.* — Cæs. B.G. IV. 29.

accēdit ut conturber, *another point is that I am disturbed.* — Cic. Deiot. 1.

mos est hŏmĭnum ut nōlint eundem plūrĭbus rēbus excellĕre, *it is the custom of men to be unwilling to admit that the same person excels in several respects.* — Id. Brut. 21.

III. Verbs of satisfaction and wonder, and impersonal expressions denoting fitness, take the accusative with the infinitive: as,

quae perfecta esse gaudeo, vehementerque laetor, *I rejoice and greatly exult that these things have been accomplished.* — Cic. Rosc. Am. 47.

accūsātores multos essĕ in cĭvĭtate ūtile est, *it is advantageous that there be many accusers in a state.* — Id. 20.

IV. **Quod** with the indicative is used to indicate the existence of a state of things, and at the same time express a judgment (compare § **63**, I.): as,

gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that I interrupted you.* — Cic. Legg. III. 1.

nōli pŭtāre pĭgrĭtiā mē făcĕre, quod non meā mănū scrĭbo, *do not think that it is through indolence that I do not write with my own hand.* — Id. Att. XVI. 15.

71. Questions.

Questions are introduced by interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs, or by the interrogative Particles **num, utrum, an,** and the Enclitic **-ne.**

An Enclitic is a particle joined in spelling to the preceding word, but retaining its independent meaning.

I. The enclitic **-ne** is used in questions asked for information merely; **nonne** when the answer *yes*, and **num** when the answer *no*, is expected; but in indirect questions **num** loses its peculiar meaning: as,

mĕmĭnistisne? *do you remember?* — Cic. Ros. Am. 28.

nonne his vestīgiis ad căput mălĕfĭcii pervĕnīri sŏlet? *is it not customary to come by these traces to the source of a crime?* — Id. 27.

num dŭbium est? *is there any doubt?* — Id. 37.

The interrogative particle is often omitted: as,

pătēre tua consĭlia non sentis? *do you not perceive that your plans lie open?* — Cic. Cat. I. 1.

II. In double questions, **utrum** or **-ne** stands in the first member, **an** (**annon, necne**), in the second: as,

utrum has corpŏris an Pythăgŏrae tĭbi mālis vīres ingĕnii dări? *would you rather this strength of body should be given you, or the strength of intellect of Pythagoras?* — Cic. de Senect. 10.

quaero servosne an lībĕros, *I ask whether slaves or free.* — Id. Rosc. Am. 27.

The interrogative particle is often omitted in the first member, when **-ne** may stand in the second: as,

sunt haec tua verba necne? *are these your words or not?*" — Cic. Tusc. III. 18.

Sometimes the first member is omitted, and **an** alone asks a question with indignation or surprise: as,

an tu mīsĕros pŭtas illos? *do you think that those men are miserable?* — Cic. Tusc. I. 7.

For Indirect Questions, see §§ **24,** II., **67,** I. 1.

72. Participles.

The time of participles, like that of infinitives, is relative to that of the verbs upon which they depend.

1. Participles are often used where the English idiom would require a separate clause: as,

vĕnienti in Lĭgŭres Hannĭbăli duo quaestōres Romāni trā-duntur, *as Hannibal is entering among the Ligurians, two Roman quæstors are given into his hands.* — Liv. XXI. 59.

instructos ordĭnes in lŏcum aequum dēdūcit, *he draws up the lines, and leads them into a favorable place.* — Sall. Cat. 59.

See examples in § 25, page 27.

2. Sometimes a perfect participle agreeing with a noun is used when the action rather than the thing is to be made prominent: as,

ab urbe condĭtā, *from the founding of the city.* — Liv. (title).

3. As there is no perfect active participle in Latin, the perfect passive, used absolutely with the noun which would have been the object, is used to express active relations: as,

his ĭnĭtĭis consĭlĭis oppĭda mūniunt, *having formed these plans, they fortify their towns.* — Cæs. B.G. III. 9.

See, respecting the Ablative Absolute, § 54, x.

73. Gerund and Gerundive.

The Gerund governs the same case as the verb; in grammatical construction it follows the same rules with nouns. But where the gerund would have an object in the accusative, the gerundive is regularly used instead, agreeing with the noun, and in the case which the gerund would have had: as,

părātiōres ad omnia pĕrīcŭla sŭbeunda, *better prepared to meet all dangers.* — Cæs. B.G. I. 5.

Subeunda agrees with **pericula**, which is governed by **ad**; the construction with the gerund would be **ad subeundum omnia pericula**, **ad** governing the gerund, and the gerund governing the accusative **pericula**.

I. The nominative of the gerund or gerundive is construed with the dative of persons, implying obligation or duty: as,

pugnandum est nobis, *we must fight*, — i.e. *fighting is our business*, or *it belongs to us to fight* (compare § **51**, VI., VIII.).

Caesări omnia ūno tempŏre ĕrant ăgenda, *Cæsar had everything to do at once.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 20.

jŭvĕni părandum sĕni ūtendum est, *it is for the young to get, for the old to enjoy.* — Sen. Ep. 36.

The Infinitive is also used as a verbal noun, like the Gerund, taking the Genitive, or the neuter of the Possessive, to express possession or duty (§ **50**, I. 1.), while the Gerund takes the Dative: as,

săpientis est parcius bĭbĕre; or, **săpienti est parcius bĭbendum**, *it is for a wise man to drink rather sparingly.*

Where the use of the dative as agent would be ambiguous — as in verbs governing the dative — a different construction must be used: thus,

ei parcendum est means either *he must spare* or *he must be spared*; but **ei parcendum est a nobis**, *he must be spared by us.*

II. The genitive is construed as an objective genitive (§ **50**, III.), following nouns and adjectives: as,

nĕque consĭlii hăbendi nĕque arma căpiendi spătio dăto, *time being given neither for forming plans nor for taking arms.* — Cæs. B.G. IV. 14.

It is used especially before **causā** or **gratiā** to express the purpose of an action: as,

dissimulandi causā aut sui expurgandi, *for the sake of dissembling or of excusing himself.* — Sall. Cat. 31.

Or even alone with the same signification: as,

cognoscendae antĭquĭtātis, *to study old times.* — Tac. Ann. II. 59.

The gerund is sometimes used with the genitive of an object not agreeing with it in gender or number: as,

sui liberandi facultas, *the opportunity of getting themselves clear.* — Cæs. B.G. IV. 34.

ego ejus videndi cupĭdus, rectā conĕquor, *eager to see her, I follow straight.* — Ter. Hec. III. 3, 12.

III. The dative follows words expressing purpose or fitness: as,

cŏmĭtia consŭlibus creandis, *comitia for appointing consuls.* — Liv. XXXV. 24. (Gerund, **consŭles creando.**)

te sŏciam stŭdeo scribendis versĭbus esse, *I desire that thou* [Venus] *be my partner in writing verses.* — Lucr. I. 25.

It is used especially to designate the functions of magistrates: as,

decemvĭri stlĭtibus [**lĭtibus**] **jūdĭcandis**, *the Board of ten for determining lawsuits.*

IV. The accusative follows the prepositions **ad, inter,** and **ob** (occasionally **antĕ, circā, in**): as,

me vŏcas ad scrībendum, *you invite me to write.*—Cic. Orat. 10.

nactus adĭtus ad ea cōnanda, *having found means to undertake these things.* — Cæs. B.C. I. 31.

V. The ablative is used after the prepositions **ab, de, ex,** and **in**; or to express manner or means: as,

in quaerendis suis, *in seeking his own comrades.* — Cæs. B.G. II. 21 (Gerund, **in quaerendo suos**).

multa pollĭcendo persuādet, *he persuades by large promises.* — Sall. Jug. 46.

74. Supine.

I. The Former Supine (in **um**) follows verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion (compare § 55, III. 2): as,

quid est, Crassĕ, inquit Jūlius, īmusne sessum? etsi admŏnĭtum vēnīmus te non flāgĭtātum, *what now, Crassus, said Julius, shall we take our seats? although we have come to remind, not to entreat you.* — Cic. de Orat. III. 5.

II. The Latter Supine (in **u**) is found only in a few verbs, especially those which express telling, hearing, and the like. It has a passive sense, and follows certain adjectives which describe the character of the action: as,

difficĭle est dictu, *it is hard to say* [in the telling]. — Cic. de Lege Manil. 22.

75. General Rules of Syntax.

I. A Noun used to describe another agrees with it in Case (Apposition). — § 46.

II. Adjectives agree with Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case. — § 47.

III. Relatives agree with their Antecedents in Gender, Number, and Person. — § 48.

IV. A Verb agrees with its Subject Nominative in Number and Person. — § 49.

V. The Genitive is used —

1. (Subjective) to define or limit the meaning of a Noun. — § 50. I.
2. (Partitive) to denote the Whole after words signifying a Part. — Id. II.
3. (Objective) after Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, especially those implying mental action or emotion. — Id. III., IV.

VI. The Dative is used —

1. After words implying Advantage or Disadvantage. — § 51, I. III. IV.
2. As the case of the Indirect Object. — Id. II.
3. After many compounds of Prepositions. — Id. V. [VII.
4. With **esse**, to denote Possession or Purpose. — Id. VI.,
5. With the Gerundive, &c., to denote the Agent. — Id. VIII.

VII. The Accusative is the case —

1. Of the Direct Object. — § 52, I.
2. Of the Secondary Object after many verbs. — Id. III.
3. As the subject of the Infinitive. — Id. VI.

VIII. The Ablative is used —

1. To express Cause, Means, and Specification. — § 54, I.
2. With an Adjective, to express Manner or Quality. — Id. II.
3. As the Object after certain Verbs and Adjectives, — Id. III, IV.
4. After Comparatives. — Id. V.
5. After words of Separation, Plenty, and Want. — Id. VI.
6. Of Subject and Predicate, in Apposition (Ablative Absolute). — Id. X.

IX. Time *when* takes the ablative; time *how long* and distance *how far* the accusative. — § **55**, I., II.

X. Relations of Place are expressed without prepositions, in the names of Towns and small Islands. — Id. III.

XI. Twenty-six Prepositions govern the accusative; eleven the ablative. — § **56**, I.

XII. The Agent, after the passive voice, is expressed by the ablative with **ab**. — Id. IV.

XIII. In Compound Sentences, a primary tense is followed by a primary, and a secondary tense by a secondary. — § **57**.

XIV. The Indicative Mood is regularly employed for the leading verb, and the Subjunctive in dependent clauses. — § **58**, I. II.

XV. The Infinitive may be used as the Subject or as the Object of the leading verb. — Id. IV.

XVI. The subject of the Infinitive is put in the Accusative. — § **52**, VI.; § **67**, I. 2.

XVII. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines govern the case of their own verbs; but in grammatical construction they follow the rules of nouns and adjectives. — §§ **72**, **73**, **74**.

XVIII. Conjunctions connect similar Cases and Moods, § **43**.

For a summary of the uses of the Subjunctive, see § **58**, II.

76. Arrangement.

The Arrangement of words in a Latin sentence is not arbitrary, but depends greatly on the skill of the writer to give emphasis, harmony, and clearness.

In general, the Subject stands first, and the Verb last, in the sentence or clause to which they belong. The Object commonly precedes pretty closely the verb which governs it. A relative clause often goes before that containing the antecedent, especially when any stress is laid upon it. "In all ordinary cases, the adjective follows the noun, the genitive its governing substantive, and the apposition the word which it qualifies."

The most emphatic words in a sentence are the first and the last; but emphasis is given by any unusual arrangement of the words.

Thus the usual order of words to express the phrase, *the workman built me a house*, would be: **artĭfex mĭhi dŏmum aedifĭcāvĭt.** But either **domum, aedificavit,** or **mihi** may be emphasized by being put first; and **artifex,** by being put last.

If care is taken, in reading Latin aloud, — observing both emphasis and quantity as well as accent, — to bring out the sense and balance of the parts, it will be seen that great skill has been exercised in this particular by the classical writers.

Latin expresses the relation of words to each other by *inflection*, rather than by *position*, like modern languages. Hence its structure not only admits of great variety in the arrangement of words, but is especially favorable to that form of sentence which is called a Period. In a period, the sense is expressed by the sentence *as a whole*, and is held in suspense till the delivery of the last word, which usually expresses the main action or motive. A careful attention to examples quoted in the Syntax will show the flexibility and force that can be given to the language in this way.

An English sentence does not often admit this form of structure. It was imitated, sometimes with great skill and beauty, by many of the early writers of English prose; but its effect is better seen in poetry, in such a passage as the following: —

> "High on a throne of royal state, which far
> Outshone the wealth of Ormus and of Ind,
> Or where the gorgeous East with richest hand
> Showers on her kings barbaric pearl and gold,
> Satan exalted sat."
>
> *Paradise Lost*, Book II. 1–5.

PART THIRD.

RULES OF VERSE. (PROSODY.)

77. Rhythm.

The poetry of the ancients was not governed, like modern poetry, by accent and rhyme; but was measured, like music, by the length of the syllables, or vowel sounds. The measured flow of verse is called Rhythm.

Each syllable is considered as either long or short, — in quantity or length, not in quality or sound; a long syllable being reckoned in length equal to two short ones.

The quantity of radical or stem-syllables, as of short **a** in **păter** or of long **a** in **māter**, can be learned only by observation or practice, unless determined by the general rules of quantity.

A radical vowel, when not made short or long under the general rules of quantity, is said to be determined by the Authority of the poets.

78. Rules of Quantity.

Note. — The Rules of Quantity do not in all cases apply to numerous Greek words, especially proper names, which have been introduced by the Latin poets.

I. General Rules. (See § 3, p. 3.)

1. A vowel before another vowel is short.

Examples. **vĭa**, *way*; **trăho**, *draw*.

EXCEPTIONS. In the genitive form **ius**, **i** is common, but has the accent: as in **nullĭus**, **ipsĭus**; but it is long in **alīus** (**ali ius**).

In **fio** **i** is long, except when followed by **er**: as, **fīam**, **fĭĕrem**.

In the fifth declension, **e** is long between two vowels: as in **diēi**; but after a consonant, as in **fidĕi**, it is short.

In many Greek proper names the vowel in Latin represents a long vowel or diphthong, and is consequently long: as in **Thalīa**.

2. A diphthong is long: as in **fōēdus**, **cūī**.

EXC. The preposition **prae** in composition before a vowel is generally short: as in **praeustis**. — Æn. VII. 524.

4. A vowel formed by contraction is long: as **i** in **nīl** for **nĭhĭl**; **currūs** (gen.) for **currŭĭs**.

4. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant, also before the letter **j**, is long: as, **māgnus**, *great*; **rēx**, *king*; **pējor**, *worse*; **et ventis ocior**, *and swifter than winds*.

But a short vowel before a mute followed by **l** or **r** is common, — that is, it may be long in verse: as in **vŏlŭcris**, *bird*.

A short vowel, made long under this rule, is said to be long by Position; as **e** in **dŏcētne**. In **dŏcēsne**, the same vowel is long by the special rule (II. 3).

NOTE. — The above rules of Position do not apply to final vowels.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

1. Words of one syllable ending in a vowel are long: as, **mē**, **tū**, **hī**, **nē**.

The attached particles **-nĕ**, **-quĕ**, **-vĕ**, **-cĕ**, **-ptĕ**, and **rĕ-** (**rĕd-**), are short; **sē-** is long: as, **sēcēdit exercĭtumquĕ rĕdūcit**, *he withdraws, and leads back the army*.

2. Nouns of one syllable are long: as, **sōl**, *sun*; **ōs**, *mouth*; **bōs**, *ox*; **vīs**, *force*.

EXC. **mĕl**, *honey*; **ŏs**, *bone*; **vĭr**, *man*; **cŏr**, *heart*; **fĕl**, *gall*.

3. Final **as**, **es**, **os**, are long: final **is**, **us**, **ys**, are short: as, **nĕfās**, *wrong*; **rupēs**, *rock*; **hostĭs**, *enemy*.

Exc. **as** is short in some Greek terminations: as, **lampădăs**, *torches;* and in **anas**, *duck.*

es is short in nouns of the third declension (lingual) increasing short: as, **hospĕs**, *guest* (exc. **ăbiēs, ăriēs, păriēs, pēs**); in the present of **esse**; and in the preposition **pēnĕs.**

os is short in **compŏs, impŏs**, and some Greek endings.

is in plural cases is long: as in **bŏnīs**; also, in the 2d p. sin. pr. ind. active of the fourth conjugation: as **audīs**; and in **sīs, vīs, vĕlīs, mālīs, nōlīs; grātīs, fŏrīs**; and sometimes in **-ĕrīs** (perf.).

us is long in the gen. sing. and in the plural of the fourth declension: as **ăcūs**, *needles;* also in nouns of the third declension which increase long: as **virtūs.**

4. Most final syllables ending in a consonant except **c** are short: as, **ăd, āc, ăt, ămăt, ămātŭr.**

Exc. **dōnĕc făc, nĕc; nōn, quīn, sīn; crās, plūs; cūr, pār.**

5. Final **a** in words declined is short, except in the abl. sing. 1st decl.: as, **eă stellă**, *that star;* **cum eā stellā**, *with that star.*

In all other words it is long: as, **frustrā**, *in vain;* **vŏcā**, *call.*

Exc. **ĭtă**, *so;* **quiă**, *because;* **pută**, *suppose;* and, in late use, **trīgintă**, *thirty*, etc.

6. Final **e** is short, except in nouns of the fifth declension; in adverbs formed from adjectives of the first form; and in the imper. sing. 2d. conjugation: as, **nāvē, dūcĭtĕ, vērē, mănē, fĭdē, quārē (quā rē), hŏdiē (hōc diē), mŏnē, mŏnētĕ.**

Exc. **fămē; bĕnĕ, mălĕ; ferē, fermē**; also (rarely), **cavĕ, hăbĕ, tăcĕ, vălĕ, vīdĕ; infernĕ, supernĕ.**

7. Final **i** is long: as, **nāvī, fīlī, audī.** But it is common in **mĭhi, tĭbi, sĭbi, ĭbi, ŭbi**; and short in **nĭsĭ, quăsĭ, cŭĭ.**

8. Final **o** is common; but long in datives and ablatives; also, usually, in verbs.

Exc. **cĭtŏ, ĭlicŏ, prŏfectŏ, dummŏdŏ, ĭmŏ, ĕgŏ, duŏ, octŏ.**

9. Final **u** is long; final **y** is short.

III. Penultimate Syllables.

Definition. — A Noun is said to Increase, when in any case it has more syllables than in the nominative singular, which is called the Theme.

Thus **stella** is said to increase *long* in the gen. pl., **stellārum**; and **corpus**, to increase *short* in the gen. sing., **corpŏris**.

A Verb is said to increase, when in any part it adds more than one syllable to the root or stem.

Thus **vŏco** is said to increase *long* in the second person plural, **vŏcātis**; and **rĕgo** to increase *short* in the second person plural, **rĕgĭtis**.

The final syllable, added to the root or stem, is called the Termination: as in **stell-a**, **nāv-is**, **vŏc-at**, **rĕg-is**.

The syllable added before the termination is called the Increment: as, **ā** in **stellārum**, **ŏ** in **corpŏris**.

In **ītīnĕrĭbus**, **amāvĕrĭtis**, the syllables marked are called the first, second, and third Increments of the noun or verb.

In a few words, the root consists only of a consonant, or combination of consonants, from which the radical vowel has been dropped: as, **sc ĭmus**, **s ŭmus** (**ĕs**).

1. In the Increment of Nouns and Adjectives, **a** and **o** are generally long; **e**, **i**, **u**, **y**, are generally short: as,

aetātis, **servōrum**, **hŏnōris**, **ŏpĕris**, **carmĭnis**, **murmŭris**, **pecŭdis**, **chlamўdis**.

Exc. **ă** in **baccar** (**-ăris**), **hŏpar** (**-ătis**), **jūbar**, **lār**, **mās** (**măris**), **nectăr**, **pār**, **sāl**, **vās** (**vădis**), **daps** (**dăpis**); **fax**, **anthrax**.

ŏ in neuters of third declension; also in **arbor** (**-ŏris**), **inops** (**-ŏpis**), **scrobs** (**scrŏbis**); but **ōs**, **ōris**.

ē in the fifth declension; also in **haeres** (**-ēdis**), **lex** (**lēgis**), **lŏcuples** (**-ētis**), **mercēs** (**-ēdis**), **plebs** (**plēbis**), **quiēs** (**-ētis**), **rex** (**rēgis**), **vēr** (**vēris**).

ī in most nouns and adjectives in **ix**: as, **rādīcis**, **fēlīcis** (exc. **filix**, **nix**, **strix**); also **dis** (**dītis**), **glis** (**glīris**), **lis** (**lītis**), **vis** (**vīres**), **Quirītes**, **Samnītes**.

ū in **lux** (**lūcis**), **frux** (**frūgis**); also in forms from nom. in **ūs**: as, **palūdis**, **tellūris**.

2. In the Increment of Verbs (see Tables of Inflection, pp. 34–37), the characteristic vowels are as follows: —

Of the first conjugation **ā**: as, **vŏcāre, vŏcātur.**

Of the second conjugation **ē**: as, **mŏnēre, monētur.**

Of the third conjugation **ĕ, ĭ**: as, **rĕgĕre, regĭtur.**

Of the fourth conjugation **ī**: as, **audīre, audītur.**

Exc. **do** and its compounds have **ă**: as, **dăre, circumdăbat.**

In other increments —

ā is always long: as, **moneāris, rĕgāmus.**

ē is long in tense-endings: as, **regēbam, audiēbar.**

But it is short before **ram, rim, ro**; and in the personal endings **-bĕris, -bĕre**: as,

rexĕrat, rexĕrit, ămābĕris, mŏnēbĕre.

ĭ is long in forms after the analogy of the fourth conjugation: as, **pĕtīvi, lăcessītum.**

Also in **sīmus, sītis, vēlīmus**, and rarely in the terminations **-rimus** and **-ritis**; but short in the future of the first and second conjugations: as, **vŏcābĭtis.**

ō is found only in imperatives, and is always long: as, **mŏnĭtōte.**

ū is found only in the supine stem and its derivatives, and is always long: as in **sŏlūtūrus**; except in **sŭmus, fŭtūrus, vŏlŭmus, nōlŭmus, mālŭmus.**

3. Perfects and Supines of two syllables have the stem-syllable long: as, **fūgi, vīdi, vīsum**, from **fŭgio, vĭdeo.**

Exc. **bĭb- dĕd-** (**do**), **fĭd-** (**findo**), **scĭd-** (**scindo**), **stĕt-** (**sto**), **stĭt-** (**sisto**), **tŭl-** (**fĕro**); **cĭt-** (**cieo**), **dăt-** (**do**), **ĭt-** (**eo**), **lĭt-** (**lĭno**), **quĭt-** (**queo**), **răt-** (**reor**), **rŭt-** (**ruo**), **săt-** (**sĕro**), **sĭt-** (**sĭno**), **stăt-** (**sisto**); but **stāt-** from **sto**, as in **pro-stātum.**

4. The root or stem-syllable generally retains its quantity through all the forms derived from it; but when doubled by reduplication (see pp. 33, 39), the first syllable is short: as, **tŭlit, attŭlerat; vīdi, vīdĕrit; cădo, cĕcĭdit; caedo, cĕcīdit.**

Exc. **dīco** (**dĭc-**), **dūco** (**dŭc-**), **fīsus** (**fĭd-**); and some increments of nouns: as, **lēgis** (**lĕg-**), **vōcis** (**vŏc-**).

5. The following terminations are preceded by a long vowel: —

I. **-al, -ar**: as, **vectīgal, pulvīnar.**

Exc. **ănĭmal, căpĭtal, jŭbar.**

II. **-brum, -crum, -trum**: as, **lăvācrum, dēlūbrum, vērātrum.**

III. **-do, -ga, -go**: as, **formīdo, aurīga, īmāgo.**

Exc. **cădo, dīvĭdo, ĕdo, mŏdo, sŏlĭdo, spădo, trĕpĭdo; calĭga, fŭga, tŏga, plăga; ăgo, ĕgo, tĕgo, nĕgo, rĕgo.**

IV. **-le, -les, -lis**: as, **ancīle, mīles, crūdēlis, hostīlis.**

Exc. **măle; indŏles, sŭbŏles; grăcĭlis, hŭmĭlis, sĭmĭlis stĕrĭlis**; and verbal adjectives in **ĭlis**: as, **ămābĭlis, dŏcĭlis, făcĭlis.**

V. **-ma, -men, -mentum**: as, **poēma, flūmen, jūmentum.**

Exc. **ănĭma, lacrĭma, victĭma**; **tămen, colŭmen**; with **rĕgĭmen** and the like from verb-stems.

VI. **-mus, -nus, -rus, -sus, -tus**: as, **extrēmus, sŭpīnus, octōni, sĕvērus, fūmōsus, pĕrītus.**

Exc. (*a.*) **ĭ** before **-mus**: as, **fĭnĭtĭmus, mărĭtĭmus** (except **bīmus, trīmus, quadrīmus, ŏpīmus, mīmus, līmus**); and in superlatives (except **īmus, prīmus**); **dŏmus, hŭmus, nĕmus, călămus, thălămus.**

(*b.*) **ĭ** before **-nus**: as in **crastĭnus, fraxĭnus** and the like (except **mătūtīnus, vespertīnus, rĕpentīnus**); **ăsĭnus, cōmĭnus, ēmĭnus, dŏmĭnus, făcĭnus, prōtĭnus, termĭnus, vātĭcĭnus**; **mănus, ōceănus, plătănus**; **gĕnus**; **bŏnus, ŏnus, sŏnus.**

(*c.*) **ĕ** before **-rus**: as, **mĕrus, hĕdĕra** (except **prōcērus, sincērus, sĕvērus**); also **barbărus, chŏrus, nūrus, pĭrus**; **sătĭra, amphŏra, anocŏra, lўra, purpŭra**; **fŏrum, părum.**

(*d.*) **lătus, mĕtus, vĕtus, dĭgĭtus, servĭtus, spīrĭtus**; **quŏtus, tŏtus**; **hăbĭtus**, and the like.

VII. **-na, -ne, -nis**: as, **carīna, māne, inānis.**

Exc. **advĕna, dŏmĭna, femĭna, māchĭna, mĭna, gĕna, pāgĭna**; **bĕne, sĭne**; **cănis, cĭnis, jŭvĕnis.**

VIII. **-re, -ris, -ta, -tis**: as, **altāre, sălūtāris, mŏnēta, immītis.**

Exc. **măre, hĭlăris, rŏta, nŏta, sĭtis, pŏtis,** and most nouns in **-ĭta.**

IX. **-tim, -tum,** and syllables beginning with **v**: as, **prīvātim, quercētum, ŏlīva.**

Exc. **affātim, stātim; nĭvis (nix); brĕvis, grăvis, lĕvis** (*light*); **nŏvus, nŏvem**; and several verb-roots: as, **jŭvo, făveo.**

X. **-dex, -lex, -mex, -rex, -dix, -nix,** and the numeral endings **-ginti, -gintā**: as, **jūdex, īlex.**

Exc. **cŭlex, sĭlex, rŭmex.**

6. The following terminations are preceded by a short vowel: — ✍

I. **-cus, -dus, -lus**: as, **rustĭcus, călĭdus, glădiŏlus.**

Exc. **ŏpācus, ămīcus; aprīcus, fīcus, mendīcus, pŭdīcus; fīdus, nīdus, sīdus**; and **ū** before **-dus**: as, **crūdus, nūdus; ē** before **-lus**, as **phăsēlus** (except **gĕlus, socĕlus**); **ăsĭlus; lūcus.**

II. **-no, -nor, -ro, -ror,** in verbs: as, **destĭno, crīmĭnor, gĕro, quĕror.**

Exc. **festīno, prŏpīno, săgino, ŏpīnor, inclīno; dēclāro, spēro, spīro, ōro, dūro, mīror.**

III. **-ba, -bo, -pa, -po**: as, **făba, bĭbo, lŭpa, crĕpo.**

Exc. **glēba, scrība**; **būbo, nūbo, scrībo**; **pāpa, pūpa, rīpa, scōpa, stūpa; cāpo, rēpo, stīpo.**

IV. **-tas** (in nouns), **-ter** and **-tus** (in adverbs): as, **cīvĭtas, fortĭter, penĭtus.**

The above rules and exceptions cover most Latin words in common use; omitting a few Greek forms, as **crātēr, cŏma.**

79. FEET.

The most natural division of musical time is into intervals, consisting of either two or three equal parts. In music, this is called double or triple time.

These intervals are in music called Measures; in prosody, they are called Feet; and the parts are indicated by the number or length of the syllables of which the feet consist.

The feet most frequently employed in Latin poetry, with their musical notation, are the following: —

Of two Syllables.

1. $\frac{2}{8}$ | | **Pyrrhic: as, lăpĭs.**
2. $\frac{3}{8}$ | | **Trochee (choree): as, cărĕ̄s.**
3. $\frac{3}{8}$ | | **Iambus: as, bŏnō̄s.**
4. $\frac{2}{4}$ | | **Spondee: as, vēntō̄s.**

Of three Syllables.

5. $\frac{2}{4}$ | | **Dactyl: as, āttŭlĭt.**
6. $\frac{2}{4}$ | | **Anapaest: as, dŏmĭnō̄s.**
7. $\frac{2}{4}$ | | **Amphibrach: as, vĭdēntĭs.**
8. $\frac{3}{8}$ | | **Tribrach: as, hŏmĭnĭs.**
9. $\frac{3}{4}$ | | **Molossus: as, dūxērūnt (rare).**
10. | | **Amphimăcer (Cretic): as, ēgĕrānt.**
11. | | **Bacchĭus: as, rĕgēbānt.**

Feet of four syllables are combinations of those of two. The following only require special notice.

12. $\frac{3}{4}$ | | **Choriambus: as, cōntŭlĕrānt.**
13. $\frac{3}{4}$ | | **Greater Ionic: as, cōnjēcĕrăt.**
14. $\frac{3}{4}$ | | **Lesser Ionic: as, rĕtŭlīssēnt.**

The first, second, third, or fourth **Epitrĭtus** has a short syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place, with three long syllables.

The first, second, third, or fourth **Paeon** has a long syllable in the first, second, third, or fourth place, with three short syllables.

Note. — Narrative poetry was written for rhythmical recitation, or chant; and Lyrical poetry for rhythmical melody, or music, often to be accompanied by measured movements, or dance. But in reading, it is not usual to keep the strict measure of time; and often the accent is substituted for rhythm, as in prose.

The accented syllable of each foot is called the Arsis; and the unaccented part, the Thesis.

Accent, in prosody, is called Ictus, — that is, the *beat* of the foot, as in dancing.

A rhetorical pause occurring within the limits of a verse is called Cæsu'ra.

The position in the verse of the principal Cæsura is important, as affecting the melody or rhythm. It usually falls in hexameter after the Arsis, or accented syllable, of the third or fourth foot in the verse. Any break in a foot is often called Cæsura.

Note. — In modern poetry, even in modern Greek, quantity is disregarded, and the names of ancient feet are applied to combinations of accented and unaccented syllables. Thus *fully* and *foolish* are both called Trochees, although the quantity of *fully* is ˘ ˘; so *impel* and *impale* are both called Iambs. It is difficult, therefore, to imitate well in modern verse those Latin metres which contain two or three long syllables in succession, because accents seldom come naturally on successive syllables.

Owing to this disregard of quantity by the modern ear, the easiest way for a modern reader to get a peculiar melody from Latin verse is to accent (in verse) *every* long syllable, and *no* short one. Thus as prose the second verse of "Integer Vitæ" would be accented thus: —

"non éget Máuris jáculis néque árcu:"

while in poetry it is to be accented thus: —

"nón egét Máurís jaculís nequ' árcu,"

like the free rendering in English: —

"néedeth nót bów, spéar, nor a ráttling quíver."

80. Scanning.

A single line in poetry is called a Verse.

To divide the verse in reading into its appropriate feet, according to the rules of quantity and versification, is called Scanning, — that is, a climbing, or advance by steps.

A verse lacking a syllable at the beginning is called Acephalous; lacking a syllable at the end it is called Catalectic.

NOTE. — It is recommended that the student should habitually *scan* every verse he meets in the course of his study. In reading or recitation, while the prose accent should be retained, the flow of the verse may be in some degree preserved by due attention to the rules of quantity. This is called Metrical Reading.

In scanning, a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word — sometimes even at the end of a verse — is dropped, when the next word begins with a vowel or with **h**. This is called Synalœpha, or Elision; or, at the end of a verse, Synapheia.

A final **m**, with the preceding vowel, is dropped in like manner. This is called Ecthlipsis.

Hence a final syllable in **m** is generally reckoned to have no quantity of its own; its vowel, in any case, being either elided or else made long by position.

Elision is sometimes omitted when the final syllable has a special emphasis, or is succeeded by a pause. This is called Hiatus.

A final syllable, regularly short, is sometimes lengthened before a pause. It is then said to be long by Cæsura.

The last syllable of any verse may be indifferently long or short.

81. METRE.

Metre is a regular combination of feet in verse, and is named from its most frequent or ruling foot, as Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Anapæstic.

The ruling foot, so called, always consists of a combination of long and short syllables, and is therefore never a pyrrhic or spondee.

A Verse consists of a given number of feet arranged metrically. It is named from the number of feet it contains, as Hexameter, Trimeter.

A Stanza consists of a definite number of verses ranged in a fixed order. It is often called from the name of some favorite poet, as Sapphic, Alcaic, Horatian.

82. Forms of Verse.

The most common forms of Latin verse are these: —

I. The Dactylic Hexameter, called also Heroic verse, used in narrative and pastoral poetry. It consists of six feet, of which the last is always a Spondee, the fifth generally a Dactyl, and the rest indifferently spondees or dactyls.

When the fifth foot is a spondee, the verse is called Spondaic.

The introductory verses of the Æneid, divided according to the foregoing rules, will be as follows, the principal Cæsura in each verse being marked by double lines: —

ārmă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō || Trō|jae quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs
Itălĭ|ām fā|tō prŏfŭ|gūs || Lā|vīnăquĕ | vēnĭt
lĭtŏră, | mūlt' īll' | ēt tēr|rīs || jā|ctātŭs ĕt | āltō
vī sŭpĕ|rūm sae|vae || mĕmŏ|rēm Jū|nōnĭs ŏb | īram;
mūltă quŏ|qu' ēt bēl|lō pās|sūs || dūm | cōndĕrĕt | ūrbem,
ĭnfēr|rētquĕ dĕ|ōs Lătĭ|ō, || gĕnŭs | ūndĕ Lă|tīnum
Albā|nīquĕ pă|trēs, || āt|qu' āltae | moenĭă | Rōmae.

The Hexameter verse has been illustrated in English thus: —

"Strongly it | bears us a|long, in | swelling and | limitless | billows,
Nothing be|fore and | nothing be|hind, but the | sky and the | ocean."

II. Dactylic Pentameter: consisting of five feet, and used alternately with the Hexameter, to form the Elegiac stanza. It is usually divided, in scanning, into two half verses, of which the latter always has two dactyls, and each ends in a single long syllable, or half-foot: as,

cūm sŭbĭt | īllī|ūs trīs|tissĭmă | nōctĭs ŏ|māgo
quā mĭhĭ | sūprē|mūm || tēmpŭs ĭn | ūrbĕ fŭ|ĭt,
cūm rĕpĕ|tō nō|ctēm quā | tōt mĭhĭ | cāră rĕ|līquī,
lābĭtŭr | ēx ŏcŭ|līs || nūnc quŏquĕ | gūttă mĕ|īs.
jām prŏpĕ | lūx ădĕ|rāt, quā | mē dīs|cēdĕrĕ | Caesăr
fīnĭbŭs | ēxtrē|mae || jūssĕrăt | Ausŏnĭ|ae.

Ov. Trist. I. El. 3, 1–6.

The Elegiac Stanza has been illustrated thus: —

"In the hex|ameter | rises the | fountain's | silvery | column,
In the pent|ameter | still || falling in | melody | back."

III. Iambic Trimeter (senarius): consisting of three measures, each containing a double Iambus. In the first half-measure a spondee or anapæst is often substituted for the iambus; and other substitutions are occasionally used. This verse is used chiefly in dramatic dialogue.

In the following example, it alternates with the Iambic Dimeter, which consists of two similar double feet:—

bĕātŭs īl|lĕ quī prŏcūl | nĕgōtĭīs,
ūt prīscă gĕns | mōrtālĭum,
pătērnă rū|ră būbŭs ēx|ercēt sŭīs,
sŏlūtŭs ō|mnī fēnore, . . .
fŏrūmquĕ vī|tăt ēt sŭpēr|bă cīvĭum
pŏtēntĭo|rūm līmĭnă.

HOR. EPOD. II. 1–8.

IV. Alcaic Strophe, or Stanza: consisting of four verses. The first two verses (greater Alcaic) have for their base each five Iambuses, for the first and third of which a spondee is substituted, and for the fourth an anapæst; the third verse is the same, but with one complete and one half iambus in the last two feet; the fourth verse consists of two anapæsts and an iambus, preceded and followed by a single syllable, or half-foot: as,

jūst' āc | tĕnā|cēm prō|pŏsĭtī | vĭrum
nōn cī|vĭ' ār|dōr prā|vă jŭbēn|tĭum
'nōn vūl|tŭs ĭn|stāntĭs | tўrān|nī
mēn|tĕ quătīt | sŏlĭdā | nĕqu' au|stĕr.

Id. OD. III. 3, 1–4.

Or, the first verse may be divided into a spondee, bacchius, and two dactyls; the second into a spondee, bacchius, and two trochees; and the third into two dactyls and two trochees.

V. Sapphic Stanza: consisting of three Sapphic verses and one Adonic.

The base of the Sapphic verse is five Trochees, for the second of which a spondee, and for the third a dactyl, is substituted.

The Adonic verse consists simply of a dactyl and spondee (or Trochee): as,

jām să|tīs tĕr|rīs nĭvĭs | ātquĕ | dīrae
grāndĭ|nīs mi|sĭt pătĕr | ēt rŭ|bēntĕ
dēxtĕ|rā sā|crās jăcŭ|lātŭs | ārcēs
tērrŭĭt | ūrbem.

Id. Od. I. 2, 1–4.

Or, the Sapphic verse may be regarded as consisting of a Trochee, Spondee, Choriambus, and Bacchius.

VI. Lesser Asclepiadic: consisting of a spondee, two choriambs, and an iambus: as,

Maecē|nas ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē|gĭbŭs
O ēt | praesĭdĭ' ēt | dūlcĕ dĕcūs | mĕum.

Id. Od. I. 1. 1, 2.

VII. This verse is often joined with the Glyconic (the same as the above, omitting one choriambus), making the First Asclepiadic Stanza: as,

Rōmae | prīncĭpĭs ūr|bĭum
dīgnā|tūr sŭbōlēs | ĭntĕr ămā|bĭlēs
vātūm | pōnĕrĕ mē | chŏrōs;
ēt jām | dēntĕ mĭnūs | mōrdĕŏr ĭn|vĭdo.

Id. Od. IV. 3, 13–16.

VIII. Or, three Asclepiadics with one Glyconic, making the Second Asclepiadic Stanza: as,

audīs | quō strĕpĭtu | jānŭă quō | nĕmŭs
ĭntĕr | pūlchră sătūm | tēctă rĕmū|glăt
vēntīs | ēt pŏsĭtās | ūt glăcĭēt | nĭvēs
pūrō | nūmĭnĕ Jū|pĭtĕr.

Id. Od. III. 10, 5–8.

IX. Or, two Asclepiadics are joined with one Pherecratic (the same with the Glyconic, lacking one syllable) and one Glyconic, making the Third Asclepiadic stanza: as,

hīc bēl|lūm lăcrĭmō|s' hīc mĭsĕrām | fămem
pēstēm|qu' ā pŏpŭl' ēt | prīncĭpĕ Cae|săr' ĭn
Pērsās | ātquĕ Brĭtān|nōs
vēstrā | mōtŭs ăgēt | prĕcĕ.

Id. Od. III. 21, 13–16.

The above forms include upwards of a hundred of the Odes of Horace. In the eighteen not included, he employs twelve different kinds of stanzas, most of which are combinations of the verses already given. They may be briefly indicated as follows: —

1. Choriambic Pentameter (Greater Asclepiadic):

tū nē | quaesĭĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbi.
(Od. I. 11, 18; IV. 10.)

2. Hexameter, followed by the last four feet of an hexameter. — (Od. I. 7, 28; Epod. 12.)

3. Hexameter, followed by Iambic Dimeter. — Epod. 14, 15.

4. Trimeter Iambic alone. — Epod. 17.

5. Choriambic Dimeter and Tetrameter: as,

Lȳdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnes
tē dĕōs ō|rō Sȳbărīn | cūr prŏpĕrās | ămāndo. — Od. I. 8.

6. Hexameter, followed by Iambic Trimeter. — Epod. 16.

7. Verse of four Lesser Ionics. — Od. III. 12.

8. Hexameter with Dactylic Penthemim (five half-feet):

diffū|gērĕ nĭ|vēs rĕdĕ|ūnt jām | grāmĭnă | cāmpīs
ārbŏrĭ|būsquĕ cŏ|mae. — Od. IV. 7.

9. Iambic Trimeter; Dactylic Penthemim; Iambic Dimeter. — Epod. 11.

10. Hexameter; Iambic Dimeter; Dactylic Penthemim. — Ep. 13.

11. Archilochian Heptameter; Iambic Trimeter catalectic: as,

sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hĭ|ēms grā|tā vĭcĕ | vērĭs | ēt fă|vōni
trăhūnt|quĕ sīc|cās mā|chĭnae | cărī|nas. — Od. I. 4.

12. Iambic Dimeter and Trimeter, each imperfect: as,

nōn | ŏbūr | nĕqu' au|rĕum
mĕă | rĕnĭ|dĕt ĭn | dŏmō | lăcū|nar. — Od. II. 18.

In dramatic dialogue, the Trochaic Tetrameter catalectic, or Septenarius, is very often used, consisting regularly of fifteen syllables, — the same with the 8's and 7's of the common ballad measure, — usually with various irregularities: as,

ád t'advénio spém salútem cónsili' aúxili' éxpetens.
Ter. Andr. II. 1, 18.

83. Reckoning of Time. (See § 56, I. 4.)

The year was dated, in earlier times, by the names of the consuls; but was afterwards reckoned from the building of the city, the date of which was assigned by Varro to B.C. 753. In order, therefore, to reduce Roman dates to those of the Christian era, *the year of the city is to be subtracted from* 754; e.g. A.U.C. 708 = B.C. 46.

The first day of each month was called **Kălendae**, from **călāre**, to call; that being the day on which the priests publicly announced the new moon in the **Cŏmĭtia Călāta**, which they did, originally, after actual observation. Sixteen days before this, that is, on the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, but the thirteenth of the other months, came the **Idus**, or day of the full moon; eight days before the Ides were the **Nonae**. The month was thus divided into three weeks of eight days, and one of five or seven. The days were reckoned backward from these points; but as it was the custom of the Romans always to include the point of departure in such calculations, it is necessary, in order to find the day of the month, to take this into account. Thus, the day before the Kalends, Ides, &c., is called **Pridie Kalendas**, &c.; the day before this, **ante diem** (a. d.) **tertium Kalendas**, &c. Therefore, with the Kalends, *two must be added to the number of days of the preceding month;* with the Nones and Ides, *one must be added to the day of the month on which they occur; and the day of the date must be taken from the number thus obtained.* E. g. the sixth day before the Kalends of November: 31 (the number of days of October) + 2 = 33; 33 — 6 = 27. The date will be Oct. 27. — The third day before the Ides of March: 15 + 1 = 16; 16 — 3 = 13. March 13.

Allen's Classical Handbook, §§ 205, 208.

84. Reckoning of Money. (See § 14.)

The money of the Romans was in early times wholly copper, the unit being the **As**. This was nominally a pound,

but actually somewhat less, in weight, and was divided into twelve **Unciae**. In the 3d cent. B.C. the **as** was reduced by degrees to one-twelfth of its original value. At the same time silver coins were introduced; the **Denarius** = 10 **asses**, and the **Sestertius**, or **Sesterce** (**semis tertius**, represented by **IIS**, or **HS**, = **duo et semis**) = 2½ **asses**. The **sestertius**, being probably introduced at a time when it was equal in value to the original **as**, came to be used as the unit (hence **nummus** was used as equivalent to **sestertius**); afterwards, by the reductions in the standard, four **asses** became equal to a **sesterce**. Gold was introduced later, the **aureus** being equal to one hundred **sesterces**. — **Sestertium** (**M.**) = 1000 **sestertii** was used as an expression of value, not as a coin.

In the statement of sums of money in cipher, a line above the number indicated thousands; lines at the sides also, hundred-thousands. Thus **HS. DC.** = 600 **sestertii**. **HS.** $\overline{\text{DC}}$. = 600,000 **sestertii**, or 600 **sestertia**. **HS.** $|\overline{\text{DC}}|$ = 60,000,000 **sestertii**. With the numeral adverb, hundred-thousands are also understood: as, **decies**, **decies HS.**, or **decies sestertium**, that is, **decies centena milia sestertium**, or ten times a hundred **sestertia** = 1,000,000 **sestertii**.

Id. §§ 198, 199.

85. Roman Prænomens,

WITH THEIR ABBREVIATIONS. (See § 15.)

A.	Aulus.	**Mam.**	Mamercus.
App.	Appius.	**N.**	Numerius.
C.	Caius.	**P.**	Publius.
Cn.	Cneius.	**Q.**	Quintus.
D.	Decimus.	**Ser.**	Servius.
K.	Kæso.	**Sex.**	Sextus.
L.	Lucius.	**Sp.**	Spurius.
M.	Marcus.	**T.**	Titus.
M'.	Manius.	**Ti.**	Tiberius.

Id. § 212.

SUPPLEMENT.

NOTE. — The following pages are designed for the use of Teachers. The earlier ones, taken from "Latin Lessons," may be found convenient in the exercises of the class-room; while those which follow, including the sections on Inflection and Classification, will aid in giving a view of the structure of the language, valuable to the teacher, and indirectly of service to the pupil.

1. *On the Method of Teaching Latin.*

I. PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION.

THE pupil should learn thoroughly the introductory matter contained in the first seven sections of the Grammar, omitting the smaller type. If thought desirable, he may commit to memory all the illustrative examples, which should be carefully analyzed and explained by the teacher.

Thus, in the first example (§ 7), **pater meus adest**: the terminations **er, us** are nominative case-endings of the third and second declensions; the word **pater**, if pronounced with the Italian sound of the vowels, and a little thickening of the consonants, becomes the English *father*, — which was actually formed in this way, and is nearly the same word in Sanscrit, Greek, Latin, German, and English; the syllable **me** is the same as the English, and, with the adjective-ending, signifies *my*; **est** is **es** — (the same as the English *is*) — with **t** the sign of the third person; **ad** is the English *at*, meaning *to* or *near*; so that the whole sentence is, *my father is-at-hand.*

In the second example, **patris ejus amicus miseretur mei**: **is** and **jus (ius)** are genitive-endings of the third and second declensions; **amicus** has the same root as the English *amicable* (friendly); **miseretur** has the passive or reflective termination, **tur**, with the same root which is found in the English *mercy*, also in *miserable*; and in **mei** we have the word **me** with the genitive-ending; so that the sentence is, *his father's friend has-mercy on me.*

In the third example, **dedit mihi cultellum**; **magno mihi usui erat**: the doubled consonant in **dedit** (as in the English *did*)

is sign of the past tense, and means *gave;* **mihi** has the dative-ending **i** with the root **me** (**mi**); the Latin **culter** is the English *coulter* (the cutting part of a plough), and means a cutting instrument — **cultellus** being the diminutive (*a little knife*), having here the accusative-ending **um**; **magno** and **usui** have the dative-ending of the second and fourth declensions, signifying the purpose or end (see § 51, VII.); and **erat** has, with the root **ĕs**, or **ĕ**, the termination of the imperfect; so that the sentence is, *he gave me a little-knife: it was of great use to me.*

The teacher will illustrate in like manner the remaining examples. He may, however, at his discretion, defer this analysis till the review.

It will be the care of the teacher to make clear to the mind of the pupil those usages in Latin — such as the distinctions of gender, number, and case by inflection — which have little or nothing to correspond in English. The time that this will occupy will vary with the age and capacity of the scholars.

They should be taught also what the Latin language is, when it was spoken, by whom and where; they should be informed of the wealth of Latin literature, and the practical usefulness of the language in modern times. Their attention should further be drawn to the words in English which are derived from Latin (as in the cases analyzed above); and this may be illustrated from any other language known to the pupil. It is very desirable that, as new Latin words are introduced, the pupil should be taught to search for English words from the same root.

II. Definitions.

Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections are called Parts of Speech. There is no Article in Latin.

A Noun is the name of any thing: as, **hŏmo**, *man;* **nāvis**, *ship.*

If a noun is the name of a person, or of a thing spoken of by its own name, as if it were a person, it is a Proper Noun; if not, it is

a Common Noun. Thus in the sentence **Roma magna est urbs**, *Rome is a vast city*, **Roma** is a proper, and **urbs** a common noun.

An ADJECTIVE is a word used to define a quality: as, **cārus**, *dear;* **bŏnus**, *good.*

Comparison shows the degree of the quality: as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
cārus, *dear.*	**carior**, *dearer.*	**carissimus**, *dearest.*
bŏnus, *good.*	**mĕlior**, *better.*	**optĭmus**, *best.*

A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun: as, *he* for *the man.*

The First Person, **ĕgŏ**, *I*, **nōs**, *we*, is the person speaking; the Second Person, **tū**, **vōs**, *you*, is the one spoken to; the Third Person, *he, she, it, they*, is that spoken of, and has no personal pronoun in Latin, Demonstratives being often used instead.

A Demonstrative denotes a particular person or thing: as, **hic**, *this*, **ille**, *that.*

A Relative refers to a person or thing before spoken of: as, **qui**, *who*, **quŏd**, *which.*

The person or thing referred to is called the Antecedent: as, **hŏmo qui vēnit**, *the man who came.*

An Interrogative asks a question: as, **quis adest?** *who is here?* **ŭbĭnam gentium sŭmus?** *where in the world are we?*

A VERB is a word which tells an action or condition: as, **vēni**, *I came*, **cĕcĭdit**, *he fell.*

Mood denotes the manner of an action: as, **vēni**, *I came* (Indicative); **vĕni**, *come!* (Imperative).

Tense denotes the time of an action: as, **currit**, *he runs* (Present); **cŭcurrit**, *he ran* (Past).

Of Voices, the Active speaks of a person doing the action: as, **fĕrit**, *he strikes;* the Passive, as suffering it: as, **fĕrītur**, *he is struck.*

A PARTICIPLE expresses the action, etc., of a verb in the form of an adjective: as, **fĕriens**, *striking;* **ictus**, *struck.*

An ADVERB is a word which qualifies the meaning of adjectives or verbs: as, **ăcerrĭmē fĕrit**, *he strikes very hard.*

A PREPOSITION is a word which expresses the relations between other words: as, **in oppĭdum vēnit**, *he came to town;* **pro patrĭā mŏri**, *to die for one's country.*

A CONJUNCTION is a word which connects other words or sentences: as, **prōcērus et vălĭdus**, tall *and* strong.

INTERJECTIONS are exclamations: as, **heus!** *Halloo!*

GENDER is distinction as to sex, and is Masculine of male creatures: as, **rex**, *king;* Feminine of female creatures: as, **rēgīna**, *queen;* neuter of things: as, **sēdĭum**, *throne.*

Things without sex are Neuter in English: as, *stone, tree.* But in Latin they are frequently masculine or feminine: as, **lăpis**, *stone* (masc.); **arbor**, *tree* (fem.). This is called Grammatical Gender.

NUMBER signifies how many, and is Singular when one is spoken of: as, **vĭr**, *man;* Plural when more than one: as, **vĭri**, *men.*

CASE is the form a noun takes to show its relation to other words: as, **puĕri currunt**, *the boys run* (Nominative); **puĕri sŏror**, *the boy's sister* (Genitive).

This relation is generally shown in English by prepositions: as, **gesta Romanorum**, *the deeds of the Romans;* **invidia mihi**, *envy against me.*

QUANTITY is the time taken in pronouncing a vowel or a syllable, in comparison with other syllables.

Thus in the word *strengthen*, the first syllable is long and the second short in quantity or time, though they are both called short in quality or sound; in *submit*, the first is long and the second short, in quantity, though the latter has the accent.

Quantity is reckoned much more important in Latin than in English, and often shows the difference in the meaning of words. Thus **lēvis** (long **e**) means *smooth;* **lĕvis** (short **e**), means *light;* **cĕcĭdit** is *he fell;* **cĕcīdit**, *he cut* or *felled.*

EMPHASIS is stress of voice on an important word or phrase: as, *cowards* run; but *brave men* stand.

ACCENT is stress of voice on a particular syllable: as, *the nécessary resérves.*

A PROCLITIC is a word without accent of its own, that seems to lean on the word after it; an ENCLITIC is one that seems to lean on the word before it.

Thus in the sentence, *The boys, and girls too, are here, — the* is a proclitic, and *too* an enclitic.

In Latin, the enclitics **que**, *and*, **ve**, *or*, **ne**, *whether*, and sometimes **cum**, *with*, are written as part of the preceding word. Thus in Latin, the sentence given above would be, **puĕri puellaeque adsunt.**

For Definitions in Syntax, see § **45.**

III. PRONUNCIATION.

It is rather more than a thousand years since Latin has been familiarly spoken in common use, though it still continues to be the language of scholars in some places, and is very extensively used in the services and in all official documents of the Roman church. It is, however, not regarded anywhere now as a living tongue; and its correct ancient pronunciation is uncertain. In schools and universities of different countries, it is generally pronounced in the way nearest to the native tongue of each. In particular, there are two methods practised among us, known as the English and the Continental, between which the teacher is expected to make his choice.

1. *The English Method.*

The following directions may be given to those who pronounce Latin in the English method: —

1. Form the habit of a *clear, accurate, and neat articulation*, with careful attention to the rules of Quantity and Accent (§§ **3**, **4**), — especially to the Quantity of Penultimate syllables, as given in § **78**, III.

2. In the division of syllables, the English method adopts the following exceptions to the rule given in § **1**: —

a. A single consonant after any accented vowel in the antepenult except **u** is joined with it: as, **mon'ĭtus, lu'cĭbus.**

But not with **a**, **e**, **o**, when the single consonant, or a mute with **l** or **r**, is followed by two vowels, the first of which is **e**, **i**, or **y**: as, **mo'neo, pa'tria.**

b. In all other cases, two consonants between two vowels are separated: as, **mag'nus, pat'rĭbus.**

3. An accented vowel at the end of a syllable has its long English sound; every vowel followed by a consonant in the same syllable is sounded short: as, **mā'nĕ, mă'nē** (pronounced alike), **harpȳ'ia, mŏ'neo, mon'ĭtum.**

Final **a** is sounded as in the last syllable of *America.* In **tĭbi** and **sĭbi, i** has its short sound, as in *hit.* In **post** and its compounds **postea, postquam, o** has the long sound, as in the similar English word; but in **postĕri,** etc., it is short.

3. The Diphthongs **ae, oe** have the sound of **e**: that is, long in **cae'lum, ămoe'nus**; short in **hae'sĭto, ămoe'nĭtas.**

In poetry, **ei** may be regarded as a diphthong, as in **dein'de,** having the sound of **i** in *mind;* **eu** in **Orpheus,** etc., as in *feud.*

When **ui** is pronounced as a diphthong, it has the long sound of **i**; thus **cui, huic,** are pronounced *ki, hike.*

4. Consonants have generally the same power as in English. Thus, before **e, i, y,** and the diphthongs **ae, eu, oe, c** has the sound of *s,* and **g** of *j.*

ch has always the sound of *k,* as in *chemist.*

h is not reckoned as a consonant in Latin.

5. Where a combination of syllables in Latin is *similar to that familiar in English words,* it is common to give it the same sound as in English. Thus, in **natio, martius, mentio,** and (more doubtfully) **concio, t** or **c** may have the sound of *sh.* So, too, rarely, with **s** or **x,** as in **Asia, anxius.**

But where the word is distinctly foreign to us, or the combination of syllables is less familiar, it is better to retain the pure consonant sound; as in **men tī ō'tur, Min'ci us, ca du'ce us, Ly'si as, ax i ō'ma, no cti um.**

6. It is very common in English pronunciation, to slur or suppress the more difficult consonant sounds, particularly in such cases as **cn, gn, ps, pt, tm,** or **x,** at the beginning of a word; as in **Cnidus, gnotus, pseudo-, pteris, Tmolus, xylon.** But, in an accurate pronunciation of these, *as Latin or Greek words,* the full consonant sound will be retained.

Finally, there can be no correct rule to authorize the slipshod and slovenly habit of enunciation which is frequently allowed. To cultivate *a clear and vigorous utterance of unfamiliar words,* is one of the incidental benefits of careful instruction in a foreign tongue.

II. *The Continental Method.*

In many parts of the country, the Continental system has been adopted, either wholly or in part. This has the obvious advantage of bringing our pronunciation of Latin into harmony with that of the great majority of educated persons, and of coming nearer the actual pronunciation of the ancients. We can only approach to this, as it is not possible to decide in all points what it was; and, if it were possible, it is likely that it would sound too strange and foreign to obtain adoption.

Thus, in all probability, **c** and **g** were always pronounced *hard*, **j** and **v** like *y* and *w*, and **u** like *oo*. For example, **juvĕnes vīcīnārum urbium** (*the youths of the neighboring cities*) would be pronounced *yu'wen ace we ke nar'oom oor'be oom.*

And besides, the distinction between long and short vowels must be observed, like time in music, each long syllable occupying double the time of a short one in pronouncing, — as in **pă'ter, mā'ter, sŏ'lĭs** (from **sŏlus**), **sō'lĭs** (from **sōl**), — a distinction nearly or quite impossible to English speech.

Neither is the usage of Continental scholars uniform, since each follows the analogy of his own language; so that there is considerable variance, especially in the sounds of the Consonants.

For example, **ce** and **ci**, or **ti** before a vowel, are frequently (following the custom of most German schools) pronounced *tsa, tse:* thus, **cedo** is *tsa'do*, and **otium**, *o' tse oom.* But it is doubtful whether this has any authority in the usage of the Romans.

Some, again, following the Italian, would pronounce **c** before **e** or **i** like *ch* in *choose*, and give **z** the sharp sound of *ts*.

Others are of opinion that **qu** should be pronounced like *k*, and **cu** like *qu* in English: thus **qui** (nom.) would have the sound of *ke*, and **cui** (dat.) of *que.* But in Italian, **q** (as in **qui, qua,**) is always sounded as with us.

To those who prefer the Continental method, and desire at the same time to make it familiar and easy to the learner, the following rules are recommended: —

1. Practise carefully the pure Italian sounds of the Vowels (§ 2, near the end); remembering that the mixed sound, or "vanish" characteristic of English vowels (as of *u* in *rebuke, fortune,*) is never heard in the Italian, where each vowel represents a single sound, **u** being always like *oo* in *moon*, or *u* in *full*.

2. For the Consonants, follow the directions given above for pronouncing in the English method, — for example, making **t** always distinct and hard: as, **Mar-ti-us**, not *Marshus*.

3. It will greatly aid in giving the pure pronunciation to the vowels, to divide the syllables as in § 1 at the end: thus, **dŏ'mĭnus ma'gnus re'xĕrat**, *a great lord had ruled.*

But this rule does not apply to compound words, in which the words compounded are separated in the division by syllables: as, **ab-ient, ob-latus.**

4. In Diphthongs, the sounds of the separate vowels should be preserved: thus **au** will have nearly the sound of *ou* in *loud;* and **ae** of *ei* in *height*. But **ae** and **oe**, which are often interchanged with **ē**, may have the same sound if preferred.

5. In languages derived from Latin, Accent is much less strongly marked than in English. Hence it is often well to indicate *quantity rather than accent*, where it can be done without offending an English ear, — especially in syllables long by position (§ 78, I. 4), as in **immensus.**

The following rules of Accent, in addition to those given in § 4, are sanctioned by some of the best authorities: —

1. When an Enclitic is joined to a word, the accent falls on the syllable next before the enclitic, whether long or short: thus, **dŏă'que, ămărĕ've, tĭbĭ'ne?**

2. If the vowel of the Penult is short, **i** or **u** coming immediately before it is to be regarded as a semi-vowel, and pronounced like *y* or *w*, the accent going back to the syllable before: as, **mŭ'lĭĕres, mŏ'nŭĕrat, ō'ceănus, fĭ'lĭŏlus.**

But in compounds, the accent will not be thrown back of the radical syllable: thus, **im-pĭ'ĕtas, ab-fu'ĕrat.**

2. *Principles of Inflection and Classification.*

I. Roots and Stems.

1. Every inflected word consists of two parts, — the Root or Stem, and the Termination.

The Root is regarded as a primitive element of speech. It is usually a Monosyllable, of not more than three letters, ending in a consonant. Examples of Latin roots are the following:

ăcu-, *sharpen.*	fĭg-, *shape.*	mŏn-, *warn.*	serp-, *creep.*
ăg-, *drive.*	flĕc-, *bend.*	mŏr-, *die.*	serv-, *keep.*
ăl-, *rear, feed.*	flŭ-, *flow.*	mŏv-, *move.*	sĭd-, *sink.*
ang-, *choke.*	fŏd-, *dig.*	mūt-, *change.*	sĭl-, *be silent.*
ard-, *blaze.*	fŏv-, *cherish.*	năc-, *win.*	sist-, *set firm.*
aug-, *increase.*	frăg-, *break.*	nĕc-, *link, join.*	solv-, *loosen.*
bĭb-, *drink.*	fŭd-, *pour.*	nĭt-, *shine.*	sŏn-, *sound.*
căd-, *fall.*	fŭg-, *flee.*	nŏc-, *harm.*	sta-, *set, stand.*
caed-, *cut.*	fulg-, *flash.*	ŏr-, *rise.*	strĕp-, *resound.*
căl-, *get hot.*	gaud-, *rejoice.*	păg-, *fix.*	strĭg-, *grasp.*
căn-, *sing.*	gĕr-, *carry.*	pand-, *spread.*	stru-, *pile.*
căp-, *take.*	gĕm-, *groan.*	păr-, *produce.*	suād-, *urge.*
căr-, *lack.*	gĕn-, *produce.*	păs-, *feed.*	tăc-, *be still.*
carp-, *pluck.*	gno-, *know.*	pĕl-, *push.*	tăg-, *touch.*
cĕd-, *yield.*	hăb-, *have.*	pend-, *hang.*	tĕg-, *cover.*
cing-, *gird.*	haer-, *stick.*	pĕt-, *seek.*	tĕn-, *stretch.*
clŭd-, *shut.*	haur-, *draw.*	pĭg-, *paint.*	tĕr-, *rub.*
cŏl-, *till.*	jăc-, *throw.*	plăc-, *approve.*	terg-, *wipe.*
cŏq-, *cook.*	jŭg-, *yoke.*	plăg-, *strike.*	tex-, *weave.*
crĕ-, *grow.*	lăb-, *slip.*	pŏs-, *put.*	tĭg-, *stain.*
crĕd-, *believe.*	laed-, *hurt.*	posc-, *demand.*	tĭm-, *fear.*
cŭb-, *lie down.*	lang-, *droop.*	prem-, *press.*	tŏl-, *raise.*
cŭp-, *desire.*	lăt-, *be hid.*	quaer-, *seek.*	tŏr-, *twist.*
cŭr-, *run.*	lăv-, *wash.*	quăt-, *shake.*	trah-, *drag.*
da-, *put, give.*	lax-, *loosen.*	răd-, *scrape.*	trĕm-, *quiver.*
dĭc-, *say.*	lĕg-, *gather.*	răp-, *seize.*	trŭd-, *thrust.*
dŏc-, *teach.*	lĭb-, *like.*	rĕg-, *straighten.*	tŭm-, *swell.*
dŏl-, *ache, pain.*	lĭc-, *permit.*	rĕp-, *creep.*	ūr-, *burn.*
dŏm-, *tame.*	lĭg-, *bind.*	rīd-, *laugh.*	urg-, *press.*
dŭc-, *lead.*	lĭq-, *quit.*	rŏd-, *gnaw.*	ūt-, *use.*
ĕd-, *eat.*	lŏq-, *talk.*	rŭ-, *rush.*	văl-, *be strong.*
ĕm-, *take, buy.*	lūc-, *get light.*	rŭp-, *burst.*	vĕl-, *pluck.*
fā-, *say.*	lŭd-, *play.*	săl-, *leap.*	vert-, *turn.*
făc-, *do.*	lūg-, *mourn.*	scand-, *climb.*	vi-, *force.*
făl-, *cheat.*	măn-, *wait.*	sci-, *know.*	vĭc-, *conquer.*
făt-, *confess.*	mĕd-, *heal.*	scĭd-, *tear.*	vĭd-, *see.*
făv-, *wish well.*	mĕr-, *earn.*	sĕc-, *cut.*	vĭv-, *live.*
fĕr-, *bear.*	mĭn-, *lessen.*	sĕd-, *sit.*	vŏl-, *wish.*
ferv-, *boil.*	misc-, *mix.*	sĕq-, *follow.*	vŏl-, *fly.*
fĭd-, *split.*	mĭt-, *let go.*	sĕr-, *put, sow.*	volv-, *roll.*

The Stem is sometimes the same with the Root: as in **dŭc-is, rĕg-o**; but is more frequently formed from the root, either by lengthening its vowel, as in **rēg is, dūc o**; by the addition or insertion of a consonant, as in **tend o, pang o**; by the addition of a terminal vowel, as in **fuga, fugi o**; or by derivation and composition, following the laws of development peculiar to the language, as found in the perfect and supine of most verbs, and in numerous groups of derivatives and compounds.

2. Stems may be divided into two classes, — those ending in a vowel, called Vowel-Stems; and those ending in a consonant, called Consonant-Stems. They are combined with the Terminations, according to the rules of Inflection of Nouns (including Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles), and of Verbs. The inflectional forms given by the former are called Declensions; those given by the latter are called Conjugations.

The Terminations of Declension had originally nearly the same meaning in Latin as the prepositions which answer to them in English. When combined with the stems of nouns, they form declensions, or groups of Cases, which vary according to the final vowel or consonant to which they are attached.

II. Classification of Nouns.

1. Vowel-Stems of Nouns may be classed in five divisions, ending respectively with the five vowels, **a, e, i, o, u.** These vowels are found at the termination of the Ablative Singular, and before the termination of the Genitive Plural, in all the declensions; and may be seen in the following examples: —

DECL.	I. (a)	V. (e)	III. (i)	II. (o)	IV. (u)
ABL. SING.	**ărā**	**diē**	**nāvī**	**ăvō**	**ăcū**
GEN. PLUR.	**ărā rum**	**diē rum**	**nāvi um**	**ăvō rum**	**ăcu um**

They may be illustrated by the following English words: —

comma, money, pony, arrow, cuckoo.

NOTE. — The terminal vowel **i** is often interchanged with **e**, as **navi** or **nave**; thus the ablative of the third declension in most nouns becomes **e**.

2. The Terminations of Declension, in their earliest form, in Latin, are not certainly known; but they are considered,

from comparing the oldest monuments of the language with corresponding forms in other languages (especially Sanscrit and Greek), to have been nearly the following: —

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Abl.
SING.	s	is (ius)	i (bi)	m (n)	d
PLUR.	ses	rum	bus	ms	bus

NOTE. — In the nom. and acc. plural, the consonant is absorbed, *lengthening* the stem-vowel before the final s. The consonant so lost is either the hard sibilant s (nom.), or the obscure labial m (acc.), which is also dropped in poetry, before an initial vowel, by the usage called Ecthlipsis.

3. Combining these terminations with the stems (or "crude forms") given above, we have the following table of inflections for the five declensions: —

Sing. I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
N. arăs	avŏs	avĭs	acŭs	diēs
G. aras (aï)	avois (ĭus)	avis	acus	dies (ēi)
D. arai	avoi (ī)	avi ī	acui	diei
A. aram	avom	avim	acum	diem
A. arād	avōd	avīd	acūd	diēd
Plur.				
N. ares (ae)	avoes (ī)	avies (ēs)	acues (ūs)	dieres (ēs)
G. arārum	avorum	avirum	acurum	dierum
D. arabus	avobus	avibus	acubus	diebus
A. arams	avoms	avims (īs)	acums (ūs)	dierms (ēs)

1. The letters weakened or lost in process of use, are represented in the above Table in lighter type.

2. The abl. sing. ending in d is found in the oldest inscriptions: as, on the Column of Duilius, **in altod marid**, *on the high sea*. Its effect is seen in later use, in lengthening the stem-vowel: as in **arā**, from **arăd**.

3. The endings **āi**, **ĭus** (gen. sing.), **āi**, **ī** (dat. sing.), **ābus**, **ōbus** (dat., abl. plur.), remain in use in several words (§§ 9, 2, 4; 16, I.; 18, I., 2). The dative ending **bi** is found in **tibi**, **sibi**, and in the locative adverbs, **ibi**, **ubi**.

4. In the Third Declension, the stem-vowel **ĭ** is retained in many words (as **turris**, **puppis**, T. 2, I., 5, 6), in every case except the nom. plural: but, in most words of this declension, it is lost (or weakened into **e**) in the acc. and abl. singular also.

4. Consonant Stems are classed in four divisions, corresponding with the following classification of consonants: —

LIQUID,	l,	m,	n,	r.		Sibilant,	s.		
MUTE	*Labial*	surd	p		sonant	b	aspirate	f (v)	nasal m
,,	*Lingual*	,,	t		,,	d	,,	[th]	,, n
,,	*Palatal*	,,	c (k)		,,	g	,,	[kh]	,, [ng]

Nouns of consonant stems are all of the Third Declension. Many (especially monosyllables) having mute stems ending in two consonants (as **urbs**, **nox**), appear to be vowel stems that have lost in the nominative the characteristic vowel of this declension (**i**), which is found in the gen. plural **urbium**, **noctium**; in the old nominatives, **sortis**, **trabis**; and in the secondary form of the acc. plural, **urbīs**, **noctīs**.

5. The combination of consonant stems with the case-endings is shown as follows: —

Sing.	LIQUID.	LABIAL.	LINGUAL.	PALATAL.
NOM.	honor s (ōs)	op s	aetat s (ās)	reg s (x)
GEN.	honor is	op is	aetat is	reg is
DAT.	honor i	op i	aetat i	reg i
ACC.	honor em	op em	aetat em	reg em
ABL.	honor ed	op ed	aetat ed	reg ed
Plur.				
NOM. ACC.	honor es	opes	aetates	reg es
GEN.	honor um	opum	aetat um	reg um
DAT. ABL.	honor ibus	op ibus	aetat ibus	reg ibus

1. The connecting vowel (ĕ, ĭ), where required to unite the stem with the termination, is given in lighter type.

2. In the plural of consonant-stems, and in all neuters, — not only in Latin, but in all kindred languages, — there is no separate form for the accusative.

3. Masculines and feminines of liquid stems, and neuters of mute stems, do not take **s** in the nominative.

4. Adjectives follow the same rules of inflection as nouns.

5. The personal and relative Pronouns (§§ **19**, **21**) have in several of their cases — as in **mihi**, **tibi**, **illud**, **illius**, **cujus**, and the obsolete **med**, **quoius**, **quoi** — forms corresponding more nearly with the earliest case-endings than any that are found in nouns.

6. *a.* There is no special form for the Vocative in Latin, except in the singular of nouns in **us**, of the second declension. *All Roman prænomens and gentile names* (§ **15**) — that is, all names by which a boy or man would commonly be addressed — are of this form; together with many of the words (such as **filius, servus**) most likely to be used as appellatives. These all have a vocative, or form of familiar and direct address, ending in the easy vowel sound **ĕ** or **ĭ**.

b. Nouns of the first declension, including all names of women and girls, end in the open vowel **a**, and require no special vocative form.

c. Nouns of the fourth and fifth declensions include very few words, and no class of words, likely ever to be used in direct address. So with mute-stems of the third declension, excepting a few, as **dux, rex**.

c. Most proper names or appellatives not ending in **us** are nouns of liquid stems. Those ending in **l** or **r** — as **consul, imperator** — require no modification, and the stem serves both for narrative and address. Those which end in **n** drop the final consonant, both in the nominative and vocative, which end in the open vowel **o**: these include many family names, as **Cicero, Maro**; with names of crafts, as **caupo**; and numerous nicknames, as **verbero**, common in the dramatists. Greek names, such as **Plato**, — which in Greek have the nom. **ōn**, shortened in the vocative into **ŏn**, — also end in Latin in the open vowel **o**.

III. Agreement.

Agreement, in gender, number, and case, is a form of inflection in the adjective, participle, etc., corresponding with that of the noun to which they belong. It is often a necessity in a language admitting great freedom in the arrangement of words, like Latin; but in many cases it seems to be merely the demand of the ear for harmony and correspondence. In these cases it is called Attraction.

1. In some cases, — as in most cardinal numbers, — where the adjective is closely and constantly connected with the noun it belongs to, so that there is no liability of confusion, no inflection is found.

2. In certain other cases, — as in the genitive of the personal pronouns, which in actual speech are thrown into close relations with a great variety of objects, — the limiting word *tends to take the adjective inflection*, for the sake of both euphony and clearness. In the case of the pronouns, this form of inflection is called the Possessive Adjective, which may be considered as *a developed or inflected Genitive*. It is used regularly for the genitive of possession; rarely for the objective genitive (§ **50**, III., 1); and is constantly put in apposition with the genitive of nouns (§ **46**, 3) — thus serving all the functions of a true genitive, but taking the adjective inflection, apparently in order to be more grateful to the ear. The so-called genitive of the personal pronoun, — **mei, nostri, nostrum, tui, vestri, vestrum,** — is held by Madvig to be the genitive (singular or plural) of the Possessive.

3. This is also the case with numerous other genitives, especially those of proper names, official titles, or personal appellatives, which in like manner often take the inflection of adjectives (§ **47**, V.). Thus, **patris** becomes **patrius**; **regis, regius**; **puer, puerīlis**; and Cicero (Att. IV. 3) uses the phrase, **ex Anniana Milonis domo**, *out of Annius Milo's house*.

4. In like manner, the names of months are reckoned as adjectives in Latin, and take the terminations agreeing with the words **mensis** (M.), **kalendae, nonae, idus** (F.), with which they are used.

5. An example of Attraction is seen in the usage called the Gerundive, — in which the governing participle (gerund) is made to agree with the word which it appears to govern. Thus, in the phrase **urbis delendae causā**, the direct construction would be, **urbem delendi causā**; for which the former appears to have been substituted purely for the sake of euphony. In older use, the gerund was probably the form oftenest employed, in all the cases: thus we have in Plautus the nominative **agitandum est vigilias**, where in later use we should expect **agitandae sunt vigiliae**. Here, the gerundive "governs the word it agrees with," — like the participle in the French, *les plumes que j'ai achetées*, where the compound verb is "attracted" into the gender and number of the object which it governs. So the corresponding Greek verbal is used, like the gerundive in Latin, in a passive sense, agreeing with the subject; while its neuter nominative is used actively, as a gerund, governing the object.

IV. Inflection of Verbs.

The terminations of Conjugation — or personal endings of Verbs — had originally the same meaning with the pronouns which represent them in English. When combined with the stems of verbs, they form inflections, which vary, for conjugation, voice, mood and tense, according to the final consonant or vowel (or what is called the connecting vowel) of the stem to which they are attached.

Some of their earlier forms, as found in several languages more or less distantly related to Latin, may be seen in the following Table, giving the present indicative of the Substantive Verb *to be* (root, **es**) : —

	Sanscrit.	Greek.	Latin.	Slavonic.	Lithuanian.	English.
Sing. 1.	as-mi	em-mi*	s-um	yes-mi	es-mi	*am*
2.	as-i	es-si*	es	yes-si	es-i	*art*
3.	as-ti	es-ti	es-t	yes-ti	es-ti	*is*
Plur. 1.	s-mas	es-men	s-umus	yes-mu	es-me	(*are*)
2.	s-ta	es-te	es-tis	yes-te	es-te	(*are*)
3.	s-anti	(s) -enti*	s-unt	s-unti	es-ti	(*are*)

Verb-stems may be classed, like those of nouns, as vowel or consonant stems. Those ending in the vowels **a**, **e**, **i**, are found in verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations respectively; those ending in a consonant, in the third. A few stems ending in **i** or **u** are also classed with the third conjugation (see § **30**, I., III.) A few ending in **o** — as **boo**, *to bawl* — take the connecting vowel of the first conjugation.

The personal endings of verbs, for the active and passive voice, are given in § **28**. Their combination with the stem-vowel or consonant may be traced in the terminations of the four regular conjugations.

Verbs whose stem ends in **a** (first conjugation) have generally an active or transitive force: as, **fugāre**, *put to flight*, compared with the intransitive **fugēre**, *to flee*.

Verbs whose stems end in **e** (second conjugation) have generally a neuter intransitive meaning, signifying a state or condition: as, **caleo**, *to be hot*, compared with **calefacio** (or **-facto**), *to heat*; or with the inceptive **calesco**, *to grow hot*.

For the signification of other derivative verb-forms, see § **36**.

*Old Form.

3. *On some peculiar Constructions in Latin.*

I. Idioms.

An Idiom is a form of phrase varying from the laws of general grammar, resulting from the habits of thought or custom of speech prevailing among any people.

Compared with most modern languages, especially English, there are very few idiomatic constructions in Latin. The most marked of all — the use of the Gerundive — has been treated under the head of Inflection. It may be regarded as simply a case of Attraction, and presents no difficulty whatever in the construction of the sentence.

The idiomatic expressions found in the dramatists, especially Plautus, are simply exhibitions of popular humor, coming rather under the designation of *slang*. They are very interesting as studies of the genius and temper of the people; but have had no effect whatever on the structure of the language itself, or its laws of composition.

The most idiomatic construction found in ordinary use is the Ablative Absolute (§ **54**, x.) This may be described as simply the Apposition of the subject and predicate *in parenthesis*, — being introduced by way of explanation, and not depending on the main structure of the sentence in which it stands. Thus, in direct construction, **Caesar consul erat**, *Cæsar was consul;* but in parenthesis, **Caesare consule**, *while Cæsar was consul.* The predicate in Ablative Absolute is most frequently a participle; as, **Caesare interfecto**, *when Cæsar was slain;* but it may be either a noun or adjective (as in the former example, — assuming, if we choose, the imaginary participle of **esse**, *to be*); or the neuter ablative of a passive participle used without any subject, — impersonally, or adverbially: as, **consulto**, *deliberately* (*the matter having been consulted on*).

II. Substantive Clauses.

The chief difficulty of understanding Latin consists not (like that of modern languages) in the use of idioms, but in

the great frequency and extent with which it employs a few easy grammatical artifices. These are, the use of the historical infinitive (§ **49**, III.); the omission of the copula **esse**, — very common, especially in the periphrastic forms (§ **40**), and in such condensed and elliptical writers as Tacitus; and the use of Substantive Clauses (§ **70**). The last alone requires any special illustration. It may be briefly explained as follows:—

1. A phrase or sentence is often used in Latin, instead of a noun, either as Subject or Object of the leading verb. So used, it may be called a Substantive Clause.

2. When a substantive clause is used as Subject, its own principal verb may be in the Infinitive (with or without a subject-accusative), or in the Subjunctive with **ut** (§ **70**, II., III.) The verb to which the clause is subject is then called Impersonal: as in the example, **miseret me te esse pauperem; restat ut fortiter progrediamur.**

3. When a substantive clause is used as Object, it usually depends on some verb of knowing, thinking, or telling (**sentiendi aut declarandi**, § **52**, VI.; **67**, I., 2), and its own principal verb is in the Infinitive, with subject-accusative. It then called **Oratio Obliqua** (§ **67**); and may be expanded into a narrative or discourse of indefinite length, frequent in Cæsar and in Livy.

4. Another form of the substantive clause — consisting of the indicative with **quod** — has been illustrated in § **70**, IV.

5. The subordinate verb in a substantive clause always takes the subjunctive, *when it expresses the reason of an act, or an essential part of the thought or argument;* but not, necessarily, when the thought expressed by it may be regarded as distinct: thus,

oportet puerum qui ludat vapulare, *a boy who plays must be flogged;* — where **qui ludat** gives the reason of the flogging; but,

oportet hunc puerum, qui ludit, vapulare, *this boy, who is playing, has got to be flogged,* — perhaps for something else.

It will be observed that the Subjunctive Mood in Latin has, in general, *no special meaning of its own*, as distinct from the Indicative; but is only a parallel form of inflection, required in certain constructions, which have been classified in the Syntax.

Most of these cases may be reduced to two groups: first, Conditional Sentences, — including Implied Conditions, together with Wishes, Commands, and Purposes; secondly, Intermediate Clauses, which express the thought or feeling of some other person than the writer or speaker (§ 66, I.) Such intermediate clauses are found especially in the **Oratio Obliqua**, and other classes of Substantive Clauses described above.

A few cases of Subjunctives are hard to reduce to either of these heads. Subjunctives of Result (§ 65) probably belong to the second head. They may be, however, as D'Arcy Thompson suggests, only an imitation of Final Clauses: in Greek, they take the Indicative.

NOTE. — Many of the statements and grammatical forms in the foregoing Supplement, especially in the section on Classification and Inflection, are taken from Bopp's Comparative Grammar, Key's Crude-form Grammar, and Donaldson's Complete Latin Grammar, together with his "Varronianus." The classifying of nouns by their vowel-endings was first proposed by Varro, the friend of Cicero, who took the form of the ablative singular as the basis of his system.

While we consider the view here presented to be of much interest and value as a key to the structure of the language, it may be well, in practice, to vary from the natural order in which the forms are given, — for example, in the third declension taking liquid stems first, as in "Latin Lessons;" and not to perplex the learner with any theory of stem-endings, till later in his course.

INDEX.

THE NUMBERS REFER TO PAGES.

a or **ab**, 47; in composition, 2; after passive verbs, 77.
abesse, 30.
Ablative, 5; plural ending, id.; in abus, 6; i, 8; SYNTAX, 69; of cause, etc., id.; of manner, etc., 70; after special verbs and adjectives, id.; after comparatives, 71; of separation, id.; after **opus** and **usus**, id.; of origin, 72; of price, id.; absolute, id.; of time, 73; of distance, id.; of place, 74; of direction, 75; after prepositions, 46, 75; of agent (with **ab**), 77, of gerunds, 101.
ac. — *See* **atque.**
Accent, 3; of **ingeni**, **Vergili**, etc., 7; of **benefacis**, etc., 42.
Accusative, 4; ending, 5; **im**, 8. SYNTAX, 66; after neuter verbs, 67; two accusatives, id.; adverbial (synecdoche), 68; in exclamations, id.; as subject of infinitive, id. 92; of time, 73; of space, id.; of distance, id.; of place, 74; of gerunds, 100.
ad, 47; in composition, 2, 65.
adesse, 30.
Adjectives, 14; comparison, 15, 56; agreement, 54; as nouns, 55; equivalent to gen., 56; denoting a part, id.; followed by gen., 61; by dat. 63.
Adverbs, 44; numeral, 19; comparison, 44; partitive, 61.
aer, acc. **aera**, 10.
Agreement, rules of, 53.
aio, 43.
-al and **-ar**, neuter endings, 8.
Alcaic strophe, 116.
alius, use, 56; gen., 14.
Alphabet, 1.
alter, as correl., 23; gen., 14.
ambo, declension, 19.
amplius, peculiar use, 71.
an (**annon**), 98.
ante, in expression of time, 73; in the day of the month, 76; with **quam**, 77.
Antecedent, 57.
Antepenult, 3.
antequam, with subjunctive, 86.
ăpăge, 43.
Apodosis, 81; in **oratio obliqua**, 92.
Apposition, 53; with locative case, 54.
aptus, followed by subjunctive, 90.
Arrangement, 103.
Arsis, 113.
as (Roman coin), 120.
Asclepiadic verse, 117.
at, 30; compared with **vērum**, etc., 48.
atque (**ac**), compared with **et**, etc., 47; in a relative use, 23, 50.
audeo, 40.
aut, compared with **vel**, etc., 48.
autem, compared with **at**, etc., 48; position, 50.
Authority in Prosody, 105.
ăve, 43.

belli, as a locative, 74.
bōs, declension, 10.
c for **k** and **q**, 1; pronunciation, 2, 126, 127.
Cæsūra, 113.
Cardinal numbers, 18.
Cases, 4.
căve, in prohibitions, 80.
causā, with gen. (motive), 69; of gerunds, 101. [-ce, 21.
cĕdo (defective), 43.
celo, with two accusatives, 67.
certe and **certo**, compared, 45.
circum, compounds of, with accusative, 67.
clam, as preposition, 76.
coepi, 43.
Collective nouns, with plural verbs, 59.
Comparative, of adjectives, 15; its use, 17; of adverbs, 44; followed by ablative, 71.
Comparison, 3; of adjectives, 15; irregular, 16; of adverbs, 44; between adjectives, 17, 56.
Compound nouns, 52.
con (**cum**), in composition, 2.
Conditional sentences, 81, 92.
Conjugation, 3; rules of, 38; four conjugations, 32, T. 7–11.
Conjunctions, 47.
Consonants, 1.
Copula, 53; omitted, 39.
Correlatives, 23.
constructio ad sensum, 55.
cŏtidie for **quotidie**, 1.
Crime, 62.
cum, prep., appended to pronouns, 21, 22; to express manner, &c., 76.
cum (**quum**) conj., 49; in the sense of *although*, 85; *when*, 86; *because*, 87.
Dactylic measure, 115.
Dative case, 4; ending, 5; in **abus**, 6; SYNTAX, 63; of advantage, 64; ethic, id.; of indirect object, id.; after certain verbs, id.; after nouns, 65; after prepositions in composition, id.; of possession, 66; of end, 67; after the gerundive, id.; of gerunds, 101.
de, compared with **ab** and **ex**, 47; in denoting crime, 62.
dēbui, with present infinitive, 79.
Declension, 3; five declensions, 5; first, 6; second, 7; third, 8; fourth, 11; fifth, 12; irregular, 12; of adjectives, 14; third declension, 15; of gerund, 27; inflections, 130.
Definitions in Syntax, 53.
deinde, following **primum**, 46.
Demonstratives, 21; (correlatives, 23;) with particle, supplied by relative, 85.
Deponent verbs, 40, T. 14.
Desideratives, 41.
deus, declined, 7.
dīco, imperative **dic**, 38.
dies, masc., 12.
dignus, followed by ablative, 70; by subjunctive, 90.
Diminutives, 50, 132.
Diphthongs, 1; quantity, 2.
Direction and distance, 73.
Distributive numerals, 19.
divum for **deorum**, 7.
domi, 12; locative, 79.
dŏmus, declension, 11.
dōnĕc, with subjunctive, 86.
dūco, imperative **duc**, 38.
dum, in the sense of *while*, 79, 86; *provided*, 85; *until*, 86.
dummŏdo, with sub., 85.
duo, declined, 19.
dumtaxat, 30.
Ecthlipsis, 114.
ĕdo, *eat*, 42.
ecus for **equus**, 1.
Elegiac verse, 115. [125.
Elision, 114. Enclitics, 98, 106.
Endings, personal, of verbs, 30,
ĕnim, compared with **nam**, 48; position, 50.

eo, 42.
Epicenes, 4.
-er, adj. ending, 3d decl., 15,
ergo, compared with **igitur**, etc., 49.
es final, pronunciation, 2.
esse, paradigm, 30; omitted, 39.
est, with preceding word, 2.
et, compared with **que**, etc., 47; **et . . . et**, 50.
ĕtĕnim, 48; position, 50.
ĕtiam, compared with **quŏque**, 45.
etsi, compared with **quamvis**, etc., 85.
ETYMOLOGY, 1–52.
ex, compared with **ab** and **de**, 47; in composition, 2; for partitive genitive, 61.
Exclamations, 68.
făcio, 42; compounds, id.; imperative **fac**, 38.
fāri, 43.
Feet in Prosody, 111.
fel (genitive **fellis**), 10.
fĕro, 42; imperative, **fer**, 38.
fīdo, 40. [Festivals (pl.) 12.
Final syllables, rules of quantity in, 106.
fīo, 42; quantity, 106.
fŏre ut, with subjunctive, 94.
Formation of words, 50, 132.
Frequentatives, 41.
frētus, followed by Abl., 70.
fruor, governing ablative, 70.
fungor, governing ablative, 70.
Future tenses, 29; infinitive in **oratio obliqua**, 94.
g, pronunciation, 2.
gaudeo, 40.
Gender, 4; 3d decl., 11, T. 2.
General truths, 79, 83.
Genitive case, 4; ending, 5; in **āi** and **as**, 6; in **ium** (plural), in vowel stems, 8, 125. in consonant stems, 11; in **ius**, 7, 15; syntax, 59; subjective, id.; of quality, 60; as appositive, id.; after adjectives, id., 61; partitive, 60; objective, 61; after verbs, 62; of measure, 73; of gerunds, 100.
Gerunds, 27; syntax, 99, 100.
Gerundives, 26, 44; syntax, 99.
Glyconic verse, 117.
Gothic languages, 29.
Government, 53; rules, 59.
grātiā, with gen. (motive), 69.
Greek nouns, first decl., 6; second decl., 7; third dec., 10.
Greek words in Prosody, 105.
Hexameter verse, 115.
Hiatus, 114.
hic, compared with **is**, etc., 21.
Horace, odes of, 118.
hūmi, locative, 74.
Iambic verse, 116.
Ictus, 113.
idcirco, compared with **ĭtăque**, etc., 49.
ĭdem, **ĕădem**, **ĭdem**, 22.
idōneus, followed by subjunctive, 90.
id quod, 58.
-ier, (infin. pass.), 38.
ĭgĭtur, compared with **idcirco**, etc., 49; position, 50.
ille, compared with **hic**, 21.
-im, (subjunctive), 38.
Imperative, 25; future, 26, 80; passive (formed), 38; syntax, 80; in **oratio obliqua**, 93.
Imperfect tense, 28; compared with perfect, 29.
Imperfect subjunctive, formation, 38; in conditional sentences, 82; potential, 83.
Impersonals, with dative, 65; of verbs of saying, &c., 94.
in, compared with **ad**, 47; syntax, 46, 75; in composition, 2.
Inceptive or inchoative verbs, 41.
Increment, 11; quantity, 108.
Indeclinable nouns, 12; neut. 4.
Indefinite pronouns, 23; correlatives, id.

Indicative, 24; **syntax**, 80; in conditional sentences, 82; for subjunctive, 83; after **quam-quam**, etc., 85; with **cum** temporal, 86; after **dum**, *while*, etc., id.; with **cum** in sense of **quod**, 87; with **quod** in substantive clauses, 97.
indignus, followed by ablative, 70; by subjunctive, 90.
Infinitive, 26; syntax, 81; historical, 59; time of tenses, 79; subject or object of verb, 81; expressing purpose, id; with subject accusative, 68, 92; after verbs of wishing, 95; after impersonal verbs, 97; as noun, 56, 81, 100.
Inflection, 3, 129–136.
inquam, 43.
Instrument and agent, 69, 77.
Intensive verbs, 41.
intĕrest, constructions, 63.
Interrogative pronouns, 22; correlatives, 23; particles, 98.
ipse, 22.
Irregularities, in nouns, 11, 12; in comparison, 16; in verbs, 38.
is, compared with **hic**, etc., 22.
īsta, compared with **is**, etc., 22.
ĭtăque, compared with **ergo**, etc., 49.
ĭter, declension, 10.
ius, gen. 7, 17; quantity, 106.
jam, compared with **nunc**, 45.
jĕcur, declension, 11.
jŭbeo, with acc. and inf., 96.
Juppiter, declension, 11.
Labials, 1, 9.
lac (genitive, **lactis**), 10.
lampas, declension, 11.
lĭcet, 85.
Linguals, 1, 10. Liquids, 1, 9.
Locative case, 5; second decl., 7; in e, 11, 74; syntax, 74; with noun in appos., 54.
măgis, **maxĭme**, 16.
mālo, 41.
Measure, 70, 73.
mei, objective genitive, 20.
mĕl (genitive, **mellis**), 10.
mĕmĭni, 43; with pres. inf., 79.
Metre, 114. [-**met**, 21.
mīlĭtiae, as a locative, 74.
mille, 19.
mĭnus, peculiar use, 71.
mĭnōris, gen. of price, 72.
mĭsĕreor, **mĭsĕresco** and **mĭsĕret**, with gen., 62.
mŏdo, with subjunctive, 85.
Money, reckoning of, 13, 119.
Months, days of, 76, 119.
Moods, 24; syntax, 80.
Mute consonants, 1; stems, third declension, 9, 132.
nam, compared with **enim**, 48.
Names, proper, 13, 120.
namque, 48; position, 50.
nē, with imperative, 25, 80; in final clauses, 88; after verbs of fearing, 88; of hindering, 89; omitted, id.
-nĕ, in questions, 98.
nĕc.— *See* **neque**.
necne, 98.
nĕque (**nec**), 47, 50.
nequeo, 42.
nescio an; **nescio quis**, 92.
neuter, gen., 14.
Neuter Adjectives, 55, 60, 68.
Neuter endings, 5.
Neuter part. with **opus**, 71.
Neuter verbs, used impersonally, 44; governing acc., 66.
Neut. and Neutr. Passive, 40.
nĭsi, 81, **nēve**, 25.
nōli, in prohibitions, 80.
nōlo, 41.
Nominative case, 4; for vocative, 68; governing acc., 66.
nonne, 98.
nostri and **nostrum**, uses compared, 20.
Nouns, 6; irregular, 12; defective, id.; indeclinable, id.; variable, 13; endings, 125.
nullus, genitive, 14.
num, 98.

Numerals, 18.
nunc, compared with **jam**, 45.
o for **u**, 2.
ob, expressing motive, 69.
Object, 53.
Object clauses, 96.
Oblique cases, 5.
ŏdi, 43.
ŏpĕrā, with gen. (instrument), 69.
ŏportuit, with pres. inf., 79.
ŏpus, followed by abl., 71.
orātio oblīqua, 91.
Ordinal numbers, 18.
os, final, pronunciation, 2; in second declension, 7.
pălam, as preposition, 76.
Palatals, 1; stems, 3d decl., 10.
Participles, 26; examples of use, 27; syntax, 99; abl. absolute, 72.
Particles, 3; interrogative, 98.
Passive voice, 24; used reflectively, id.; formation, 38; impersonally of neuter verbs, 44, 65; use of, 129.
Patronymics, 50; **patrials**, 10.
pĕlăgus, neuter, 7.
Pentameter, 115.
Penalty, 62.
Penult, 3; quantity of, 108.
per, with living beings (instrument), 69.
Perfect tense, 28; compared with imperfect, 29; indefinite used for definite, 79.
Perfect subjunctive, use, 78.
Periphrastic forms, 44.
Period, 104.
Personal pronouns, 20.
pertaesum est, with gen., 62.
pĕto, used with preposition, 67.
Pherecratic verse, 117.
pĭget, with genitive, 62.
Place, 74.
Pluperfect subjunctive, formed, 38; in conditional sentences, 83; in **oratio oblīqua**, 93.
plūris, genitive of price, 72.
plus, peculiar use, 71.
poenĭtet, with genitive, 62.
Position, 106.
posse, 30.
Possessive adj. pronouns, 21; as noun, 55; for gen. 21, 56; with **dŏmi**, &c., 74.
post, in expressions of time, 73; with **quam**, 77.
posteāquam (postquam), followed by perfect indicative, 28, 78, 86.
postrīdie, with gen., 63; with acc., 76.
postĭlo, used with prepos., 67.
Potential subjunctive, 84.
pŏtior, with abl., 70; with gen., 63.
pŏtui, with pres. inf., 79.
praesens, 30.
praesertim, strengthening the relative, 87.
Predicate, 53.
Prepositions, 46; syntax, 75; governing dative in compounds, 65; governing acc. in compounds, 67.
Present subjunctive, in conditional sentences, 82; in wishes, 95.
Present tense, 28; historical, id., 78; with **dum**, 79.
prīdie, with gen., 63; with acc., 76.
prīmum and **prīmo**, comp., 46.
Principal parts of verbs, 39.
prius, with **quam**, 77.
priusquam, with subj., 86.
pro, in defence of, 64.
prŏdesse, 30.
Prohibitions, 80.
Pronouns, 20, 23; (personal) omitted with verbs, 59.
Pronunciation, 2, 125–123.
prŏpior, **prŏpius**, used like prepositions, 76.
propter, expressing motive, 69.
Prosody, 105–118.
prŏtăsis, 81.
proxĭmus and **proxĭme**, used like prepositions, 76.

pŭdet, with gen., 62.
quae res, referring to a clause, 58.
quaero, with preposition, 67.
quam, with superlatives, 17; after comparatives, id.
quamquam, compared with **etsi**, etc., 85.
quamvis, with subjunctive, 85.
quando, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quanti, as gen. of price, 72.
Quantity, 2; in Prosody, 105.
quăsi, with subjunctive, 85.
-que, 47; quantity, 106.
queo, 42.
Questions, 98; indirect, 25, 91; in **oratio oblīqua**, 94; doubtful, 84.
quiă, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quin, with subjunctive, 89; **non quin**, 87. [87.
quippe, strengthening relative,
quisque with superlative, 17.
quo, with subjunctive, 88; **non quo**, 87.
quoad, with subjunctive, 86.
quod, 49; with subjunctive, 87; in substantive clauses, 97.
quōmĭnus, with subjunctive, 90.
quŏniam, 49; with subjunctive, 87.
quŏque, compared with **ŏtiam**, 45.
quum. — *See* **cum**.
Reduplication, 33; quantity, 109.
rĕfert, construction, 63.
Reflective pronouns, 20; verbs, 24, 68.
Relative pronouns, 22; indefinite, 23; in conditional sentences, 81; correlatives, 23; SYNTAX, 57; for the demonstrative, 58; implying cause, 87; purpose, 88; result, 89; after **dignus**, etc., 90; after general expressions, id.; after **quam**, id.; with subjunctive, 96.
Rhythm, 105.
Root, 3; verb-roots, 131.
rūre and **rūri**, 74.
salve, 43.
Sapphic verse and strophe, 116.
Scanning, 113.
scio, imper. 38, **scin**, 2.
sed, compared with **at**, etc., 48.
Senarius (iambic), 116.
Septenarius (trochaic), 118.
seu. — *See* **sīve**.
si, 81. [**-sim**, **-so** (subj.), 38.
sīs for **sivis**, 41.
sīve, compared with **aut**, etc., 48.
sōdes for **si audes**, 40.
sŏleo, 40.
sōlus, gen., 14; with subjunctive, 90.
Space, measure of, 73.
Stanza or strophe, 114.
Stem, 3; of verbs, 32, 39, 40; syllables, quantity of, 109.
sub, 75; in composition, 2.
Subject, 53; clauses, 96.
Subjunctive mood, 24; examples of use, 25; general rules, 80; conditional sentences, 82; implied conditions, 84; after particles, 85; temporal clauses, 86; cause, 87; purpose, 88; result, 89; intermediate clauses, 90; indirect questions, 91; **oratio oblīqua**, 93; wishes, 95; relative clauses, 96.
Substantive verb, 53; clauses, 96.
subter, 76.
sui, use of, 20.
sŭpellex, declension, 11.
sŭper, 75; superlative of adjectives, 15; use, 17; with **quam**, id.; denoting a part, 56.
Supines, 28; **syntax**, 101.
Syllables, division, 2; contraction, 2.

Synalœpha, 114.
Synapheia, 114.
Syncopation, 38.
Synecdoche, 68.
Synesis, 55, 59, Synopsis, 39.
Syntax, 53–104.
taedet, with gen., 62.
tămen, position, 50.
tamquam, with subjunctive, 85.
tanti, as gen. of price, 72.
Tasting, etc., verbs of, 67.
Tenses, 28; primary and secondary, 29, 77; formation, 29; sequence, 77; of completed action, 29, 78. [12.
tĕnus, 76. Terminations, T. 2,
Tetrameter, 115.
Thesis, 113.
Time, 73; adverbs of, 76; relations of, 86; Roman reckoning of, 119.
tōtus, gen., 15.
trans, compounds of, with two accusatives, 67.
tres, declined, 19.
Trimeter, 116.
tui, use of, 20.
tum and **tunc**, compared, 45.
u, 1.
ŭbi, with perfect indicative, 28, 78, 86.
ūnus, gen., 15; followed by subjunctive, 90.
ūsus, followed by abl., 71.
ut, 30; in the sense of although, 85; strengthening relative, 87; purpose, 88; after verbs of fear, id.; omitted, id.; meaning *how* and *when*, id.; result, 89; in substantive clauses, 97, 98.
ut ne, 88.
ŭter, gen., 14.
ūtor, governing abl., 71.
utpŏte, strengthening relative, 87.
utrum, 98.
v, 1.
vel (**ve**), compared with **sīve**, etc., 48.
vĕlim and **vellem**, compared, 84.
vĕlŭti, with subjunctive, 85.
Verbs, 24; paradigms, 34; deponent, 40; derivative, 41; irregular, id.; defective, 43; impersonal, id.; agreement, 58; syntax, 77; of hindering, &c., 89; roots, 129.
Verbal adjectives, 52,
Verse, 113; forms of, 115.
vērum, compared with **sed**, etc., 48.
vescor, governing abl., 70.
vestrum and **vestri** compared, 20.
vīn' for **visne**, 2.
vīrus, neuter, 7.
vis, declension, 8.
Vocative, 5; form, 5; 2d decl., 7; in **ī**, 8; syntax, 68.
Voices, 24.
vŏlo, 41.
Vowels, 1; varied, 2; quantity, 2; stem of 3d decl., 8.
vulgus, neuter, 7.

Cambridge: Press of John Wilson & Son.

MADVIG'S AND ALLEN'S LATIN GRAMMARS.

In Press,

MADVIG'S LATIN GRAMMAR,

From the fifth English edition, carefully revised, and compared with the latest German edition,

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

YALE COLLEGE,

To be published in September. This will make a volume of about 600 pages, 8vo, being the most complete and valuable Treatise on the language yet published, and admirably adapted to the wants of Teachers and College Classes. Price, to Teachers, $2.50.

COURSE OF LATIN STUDY,

PREPARED BY W. F. AND J. H. ALLEN.

I. **ALLEN'S MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.** $1.25.

II. **ALLEN'S LATIN LESSONS.** $1.25.

III. **ALLEN'S LATIN READER.**

IV. **LATIN COMPOSITION.** (In preparation.)

V. **JULIUS CÆSAR** (Civil War). (In preparation.)

THE ENGLISH OF SHAKESPEARE.

Price $1.75.

Illustrated in a Philological Commentary on his Julius Cæsar, by GEORGE L. CRAIK, Queen's College, Belfast. Edited by W. J. ROLFE, Cambridge.

PUBLISHED BY EDWIN GINN,

117 *Washington Street, Boston*

COURSE OF LATIN STUDY,

PREPARED BY

WILLIAM F. ALLEN, A.M.,
Professor of Ancient Languages and History in the University of Wisconsin;

AND

JOSEPH H. ALLEN,
Cambridge, Mass.

PUBLISHED BY EDWIN GINN

117, Washington Street, Boston.

This series is printed in clear and beautiful type, on tinted paper, and with a page uniform throughout; the Latin words used for examples or illustration being given in a special type cast expressly for these books.

I. MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.

pp. 145, with Index. Price $1.25.

This Grammar is designed to be "full and accurate enough to be a practical guide to the learner, while avoiding the prodigious multiplication of details which have so overgrown that study in the ordinary school text-books." We have received the following from Harvard and Yale: —

CAMBRIDGE, Jan. 12, 1869.

ALLEN'S MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR is approved as sufficient, in the hands of a competent instructor, to qualify a student for admission to Harvard College.

A. P. PEABODY, *Acting President.*

YALE COLLEGE, Jan. 18, 1869.

I should think it sufficient, in the hands of a good teacher, for the instruction of candidates for admission to college.

THOMAS A. THACHER.

II. LATIN LESSONS.

About 140 pages. Price $1.25.

"This book of Lessons is intended, first, as a guide to the study of Latin on the basis of the 'Manual Latin Grammar;' and secondly, as complementary to that book in several points which need amplifying in the actual business of elementary instruction." It consists of three Parts, corresponding to the divisions of the Grammar: — Part I. being made up of sixty lessons, carefully arranged, with exercises designed to ground the pupil thoroughly in the grammatical forms and the simpler principles of syntax; Part II. containing the text of the first twenty-nine chapters of Cæsar's "Gallic War" (the entire story of the Helvetian war), fully illustrated by map, notes, and grammatical explanation; Part III. containing a considerable variety of exercises in Prosody, both of hexameter and elegiac verse, making a complete introduction to the metres of Virgil and Ovid. Full Vocabularies are given at the end of the book.

III. LATIN READER.

This is now in press, and may be looked for in six months. It is to consist wholly of extracts from classical authors, — not fragmentary, but each complete in itself, and including Cæsar, Sallust, Curtius, Pliny, Phædrus, Ovid, and Cicero, — sufficiently varied, interesting, and full, to furnish a suitable course of easy reading for the use of classes not preparing for an extended college course.

The Vocabulary to accompany this Reader will cover nearly 200 pages, and is designed to contain all that the scholar will be likely to require in an extended course of Latin study. It will be published separately, serving most of the uses of the larger Lexicon, which costs so much of the student's time and eyesight.

IV. LATIN COMPOSITION.

A book of Advanced Exercises, adapted to the later stages of the pupil's course, and especially designed to secure a familiar knowledge of the idioms of the Latin tongue.

V. JULIUS CÆSAR.

A volume of about 350 pages; to include the whole of the Civil War, with such extracts from Cicero, Lucan, the Gallic War, and Cæsar's own correspondence, as to make it a full history of his public life and times, given, wherever it is possible, in his own words. To be illustrated by historical introduction, notes, and maps.

Boston, February, 1869.

NOTICES

OF

ALLEN'S MANUAL LATIN GRAMMAR.

[From President HILL, of Harvard University.]

CAMBRIDGE, Aug. 7, 1868.

Rev. JOSEPH H. ALLEN.

DEAR SIR, — Of the details of your "Latin Grammar" I am not a competent judge; but the general plan and general execution I feel free to commend very warmly. The book seems to me to contain all that is necessary for those who do not wish to make a special study of philology; and to contain it in so brief a form as to give reasonable hope that a boy may become familiar with it without either overstraining his memory, or becoming disgusted with the quantity imposed on him. It is a great error to expand a text-book beyond the dimensions necessary for a clear statement of the subject.

Very respectfully yours,

THOMAS HILL.

[From Prof. BOWEN, of Harvard University.]

HARVARD COLLEGE, Aug. 26, 1868.

DEAR SIR, — Though it is not for me to speak with authority on such a subject, I believe that the publication of your "Manual Latin Grammar" will be of great service to the cause of classical studies in this country. By careful selection, arrangement, and condensation, in little more than one hundred pages of distinct and open type, you have endeavored to present *all* the grammatical forms and principles which the pupil, whether schoolboy or undergraduate, needs to commit to memory, and nothing more than he so needs, in order to read, understand, and appreciate any Latin classic; and I think you have succeeded. At any rate, whatever else of grammatical science the pupil ought to possess may be most profitably learned in the classroom, from the lips of his instructor, who will want for occasional reference some more comprehensive work. A big grammar is necessarily a big evil, and ought to be kept out of the hands of the learner, for it tends only to dishearten him and give him a disgust for his task. It is usually a wilderness of words, a heterogeneous mass of anomalies, technicalities, and theoretical refinements, often of questionable cor-

rectness, and generally ill-arranged, ill-expressed, and ill-printed. Your book evidently has great merits; it seems to me a master-piece of brevity, method, and clearness. For the use of schools and colleges in this country, I hope it will supersede every larger work, and only be superseded, should one be published hereafter equally concise, and still more lucid, methodical, and trustworthy. It will then probably have had a long term of service. Very truly yours,

FRANCIS BOWEN.

[From S. H. TAYLOR, Andover.]

ANDOVER, Sept. 1, 1868.

Rev. Mr. ALLEN.

MY DEAR SIR, — I am greatly obliged to you for the copy of your Latin Grammar which you had the kindness to send me. I am much pleased with the plan and execution of the work. It contains all the general principles of the language, clearly and concisely stated, and is sufficiently full to meet the ordinary wants of the pupil in the early part of his course. I am glad to see a Latin Grammar in so compact, and yet so complete, a form. It is very happily adapted to smooth the path of the pupil in the study of the Latin language. The type, and the whole mechanical execution, are a great luxury to the eye. I congratulate you and your brother on your success in the work, and am sure that you have done a valuable service to the cause of classical learning. With great respect, very truly yours,

S. H. TAYLOR.

[From Prof. E. W. GURNEY, of Harvard College.]

TOUCHING the main point that was spoken of, — the sufficient fulness of the treatment of the noun and adjective, — you seem to me to have shown excellent judgment. Truly yours,

PROF. E. W. GURNEY,
Harvard College.

CAMBRIDGE, Aug. 8.

[From Prof. HENRY W. HAYNES, of the University of Vermont.]

UNIVERSITY OF VERMONT,
BURLINGTON, Sept. 9, 1868.

I have examined your Manual Latin Grammar quite carefully, and am exceedingly pleased with both the plan and the execution of it. It supplies the great desideratum of a brief elementary grammar, at once simple and concise, and, at the same time, accurately embodying the latest results of scholarship. The clear and terse statement of principles seems to meet the practical requirements of a text-book.

[From President of Cornell University, Ithaca, N.Y.]

ITHACA, N.Y., Sept. 5, 1868.

Rev. J. H. ALLEN.

DEAR SIR, — Accept my sincere thanks for your "Latin Grammar." It gives some hope for classical scholarship. I have been long convinced that the most dangerous foes of classical studies are not the men who decry them, — the Philistines, — but the men who smother them, — the Pedants. If classical scholarship shall ever be utterly neglected among us, it will be because those appointed to promote it, have substituted for the great works of the great minds of antiquity, endless gerund-grinding, and second-hand scraps of doubtful philosophy, and metaphysics of the subjunctive mood.

Modern grammarians have become generally so long and so dreary, that there is *no time* for ancient authors.

I renew my thanks to you, and to your brother, for making the study of Cicero and Tacitus and Erasmus again possible, by giving us a sufficient grammar, short and to the point.

I remain, dear sir, very truly yours,

ANDREW D. WHITE.

[From Prof. J. E. CLARK, Antioch College, Ohio.]

IT seems to me a real little jewel, clear-cut and sparkling. The principles that guided you are excellent, and you appear to have carried them out with rare judgment and fidelity. It is by no means a minor merit that the examples are so copious, carefully selected and idiomatically translated, — though I believe the necessity of translating examples for beginners has come to be pretty generally recognized. I am glad that you enunciate so distinctly in your preface, as an article of faith, that the language and the literature are the real objects of study, not grammar, except as a subsidiary, and I remember the passage in which you express this conviction struck me as very forcible. After a few months' instruction in this spirit in your manual, and due "praxis in some chosen short-book lessoned thoroughly to him," such as the "Exercises" you promise, I see no reason why any intelligent youth, fond of study, may not at once proceed with delight to the literature, and study at the same time the Roman tongue and the ideas of the Roman world, and thus get what Milton — to borrow again from him — called the "substance of good things," of which he very justly regarded language as but the form.

Ever truly yours, JOHN E. CLARK

[From J. H. HANSON, of Waterville, Me., Editor of the Preparatory Course of Latin Prose.]

I HAVE examined with some care the copy of Allen's "Latin Grammar," which you so kindly sent me, and am highly pleased with both the plan and execution of the work. It comprehends all the principles of the Latin language which the student in the regular collegiate course needs to know, and its statements are so clear and concise that his labor must be very much lightened.

Very respectfully yours,

J. H. HANSON

[From Professor WHITNEY, of Yale College.]

NEW HAVEN, Nov. 4, 1868.

WE are very favorably impressed here by Professor Allen's work, and, as you will see in the College Catalogue, when it appears, have taken it as the standard for the knowledge of Latin grammar which shall be expected of those who present themselves for entrance to the Sheffield Scientific School. My confidence in the learning and the spirit of its authors is very high.

Yours respectfully, W. D. WHITNEY.

[From the Boston Evening Transcript.]

MOST of the champions of classical education are agreed in objecting to the ordinary Latin grammars. John Stuart Mill in England, Prof. Bowen, Mr. Fiske, and others in this country, equally believe in the importance of the study of the Latin language, and are equally earnest in recommending a simplification of the method of studying it. This Manual contains but a hundred and twenty pages; but the authors claim that it is a sufficient text-book for the learner. . . . Such a work deserves the attention which the character of the authors and the importance of the subject imperatively demand. The champions of classical studies cannot stand, and do not hope to stand, on the present methods of teaching. Those methods are denounced by the warmest advocates of the value of the Greek and Latin languages to a man assuming to be "liberally" educated. The "Manual" of the Messrs. Allen is therefore an experiment of some importance. It is the attempt of two accomplished Latin scholars to have the study of Latin adapted to the principles of good sense.

[From Professor MAGILL, of Swarthmore College, Penn.]

I HAVE examined, with great care and eminent satisfaction, your new "Manual Latin Grammar;" and do not hesitate to pronounce it, in the language of the preface, "full and accurate enough to be a practical guide to the learner, but avoiding the prodigious multiplication of details which have so overgrown that study in our ordinary school text-books." The editors seem to have been very successful in selecting and presenting, in a concise and intelligible form, the essential principles of the language. This unpretending, yet most excellent little book, well mastered, will make far more accurate and thorough Latin scholars than the painful and discouraging study of the more voluminous grammars in common use. Among so much that is excellent it is difficult to particularize; but I may mention the condensed view of the conjugations of the verbs; the truly philosophical treatment of the subjunctive, and the article on the quantity of penultimate syllables.

No one can speak fully of the value of such a book until it has been subjected to the test of the class-room; but it is very clear that this methodical and perspicuous statement of the principles of Latin grammar is the ripe fruit of long and successful experience there. It gave me great satisfaction to find several subjects abridged and presented in almost the identical form which I have found it necessary to adopt for years in the practical work of the class-room.

This book will not supply the place of oral instruction, and no good text-book will do that. Amplifications and full explanations must come from the lips of the living teacher only.

EDWARD H. MAGILL.

[From the Unitarian "Monthly Journal."]

THIS little work of 127 pages is worthy of the highest praise, as a monument of painstaking fidelity, and of thorough acquaintance with the structure of language and with the principles of instruction. Within this short compass, in clear, distinct type, and with ample illustration, is given all that is really essential for such comprehension of Latin as is usually attained in the school and college course. We commend it to all who are interested in the cause of education, and believe it is likely to find a wide acceptance.